# Assessing tsunami evacuation behaviour and dynamics of a near-source threat – the case study of Kaikōura township following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake

A thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the Degree of

Master of Science in Disaster Risk and Resilience

By

# **Laura Rose Tilley**



School of Earth and Environment
University of Canterbury
New Zealand
2020

# Frontispiece



Kaikōura "Be Prepared, not scared" — Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence Emergency Management

#### **Abstract**

Recent global tsunami events including the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami, have reinforced the importance of improving scientific understanding of tsunami hazard risk assessment and implementation of tsunami risk management. During an earthquake-tsunami event, evacuation is considered the primary risk reduction strategy for preventing casualties. Empirical data on evacuation behaviour and movements during and after past tsunami events has the potential to inform future disaster risk management and evacuation response planning. To date however, the majority of tsunami evacuation behaviour research has focused on specific aspects of evacuation response such as tsunami preparedness, risk awareness, or evacuation intentions. There have been limited contributions to capturing a comprehensive overview of a 'real-event' complete evacuation process to enhance knowledge on response to warnings and evacuation decision-making, evacuation movements, and additional activity after evacuation. Moreover, tsunami evacuation modelling has been an increasingly applied risk management tool to assess evacuation potential for at risk communities however, very few publications have used 'real-event' evacuation parameters to improve realistic evacuation modelling outputs.

In this Masters of Science thesis a New Zealand case study is used to address this gap in global tsunami research literature with an analysis of the evacuation of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami, which is used to inform the development of a network-based evacuation model. A survey was developed with disaster risk management practitioners involved during the response phase of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake to enhance understanding of:

- Local awareness of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate before and after the 2016
   Kaikoura earthquake
- The influence of risk awareness on evacuation-decision-making by residents
- Which warnings prompt evacuation actions
- Evacuation dynamics including origin-route-destination and congestion barriers
- Earthquake and tsunami preparedness actions taken before and after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

A total of 1055 surveys were distributed in Kaikōura township, with 131 returned (12.4% return rate). Key survey findings indicate that prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, respondents had a 'good' (44%, n=55) or 'very good' (25%, n=31) level of knowledge on tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate. This contributed to a large proportion (79%, n=88) of respondents who reported that they evacuated due to the potential tsunami threat during and immediately after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The vast majority (95%) of those living in the tsunami evacuation zone at the time (n=64)

reported that they evacuated. Almost half (45%) of respondents who were residing outside tsunami evacuation zones (n=42) evacuated, with most reporting that they did so because of 'severe shaking and aftershocks'. Reported congestion barriers included bridge failures, fallen lamp post, and road damage due to subsidence caused by the earthquake. These barriers slowed down evacuation time of some residents, particularly along Churchill Street and Killarney Street, adding minutes to their total evacuation time. More than half (55%) of respondents evacuated prior to the first tsunami wave was recorded after the earthquake (within 10 minutes). Ninety percent of respondents reported they evacuated by the time at which the tsunami's highest point was measured on the Kaikōura sea level gauge (40 minutes after the earthquake). The duration time at which survey respondents reported they stayed at their evacuation point ranged from 30 minutes to 48 hours. The most common reported time was 6 hours (18%). Over half (52%, n=45) of respondents reported they returned from their evacuation point when they felt it was safe to do. Thee three commonly reported preparedness actions residents have made following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake include, prepared an emergency kit with essential items (57%, n=70), discussed an evacuation plan with friends and family or household members (54%, n=67), and prepared a go bag containing essential items (43%, n=53).

Evacuation behaviour and movements from the survey results informed key parameters for developing a network-based vehicular model. The model utilises Kaikōura's road network and evacuation density to predict evacuation times and congestion potential for future events. Key findings under an 'ideal' night-time scenario predicted a total evacuation time of 12:05 minutes for Kaikōura Township to evacuate to safety. This time estimate is a concern for future local-source tsunami threats which could result in tsunami waves arriving at the coast in a matter of minutes. Households in South Bay, located along Avoca Street (west of Kaikōura Peninsula), and north of the township are expected to take the longest time to evacuate (greater than 5 minutes). The response actions reported by Kaikōura residents during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake aligned well with the results of the network-based evacuation model. Evacuation times, congestion pin points and safe zone capacity of the evacuation model were consistent with the 2016 response actions. However, further analysis could refine the evacuation model to include evacuation delay time, congestion restrictions, and incorporation of both pedestrian and vehicle evacuation.

This thesis A) advances the understanding of a complete evacuation response process of a local-source earthquake and tsunami event in New Zealand and B) develops a network-based vehicular evacuation model informed by realistic evacuation behaviour data and movements of residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, which can be used to inform evacuation planning for Kaikōura and other coastal communities exposed to local-source tsunami. The methods and results presented in this thesis highlights the critical need for such work to be conducted for communities exposed to tsunami

hazard risk, specifically areas susceptible to local source tsunami that would require immediate evacuation. Understanding real-event evacuation response provides valuable opportunities to analyse and inform disaster risk management and emergency response planning to increase national and global tsunami resilience.

## Acknowledgements

I wish to firstly express my immense gratitude to my supervision team: Professor Thomas Wilson, Dr Matthew Hughes, and Dr Sarah Beaven, for this opportunity to conduct such an important and rewarding research project. Thank you for your support, guidance, and expertise throughout the entirety of this research. I am extremely grateful for your time, numerous opportunities and mentorship along the journey.

I want to thank Kd Scattergood (Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence Emergency Management Officer) and Helen Jack (Environment Canterbury Natural Hazards Analyst) for your collaboration, ongoing support and valuable input throughout this research project. I would like to acknowledge Canterbury Civil Defence & Emergency Management and Christchurch City Council Civil Defence & Emergency Management for your support.

I want to acknowledge and thank the 'Quicker Safer Tsunami Evacuations' research team, led by Dr William Power. Thank you for the opportunity to collaborate alongside such an awesome team of researchers and improve my understanding and skills on tsunami evacuation modelling and the importance of community engagement.

I would like to acknowledge the University of Canterbury School of Earth and Environment administrative and technical staff: Rebekah Hunt, Janet Warburton, Matt Cockcroft, John Southward and Sasha Baldwin. Thank you for your support and assistance throughout my postgraduate studies at UC.

I am very appreciative of the funding I have received for this research project and would like to thank: the Ministry of Business Innovation and Employment's National Science Challenge: Resilience to Natures Challenges, Natural Hazards Research Platform and the University of Canterbury School of Earth and Environment (formerly Department of Geological Sciences) Mason Trust Committee for their financial support to undertake fieldwork and attend and present at relevant conferences.

Thank you to the Disaster Risk and Resilience Research Group for everyone's support, discussions, laughs and all-round good times. You are such an awesome group of people and am honoured to work and collaborate alongside you. Thank you James Williams and Kristie-Lee Thomas for your helpful discussions and chats on all things Tsunami related. A special thanks to Lina Le and Luke Hewitson who assisted me with distributing surveys to every letterbox in Kaikōura, and Danielle Barnhill for collaborating on the wider research project to understand evacuation dynamics in the Canterbury region.

Last, but certainly not least, a massive thank you to my friends, family, and partner for being my greatest support and encouragement throughout my university studies. None of this would have been possible without you.

# List of Acronyms

ABM Agent Based Model

CCC Christchurch City Council

CCC CDEM Christchurch City Council Civil Defence Emergency Management

CDEM Civil Defence Emergency Management

Canterbury CDEM Canterbury Civil Defence and Emergency Management

CASPR Capacity-Aware Shortest Path Evacuation Routing

DRM Disaster Risk Management

DRR Disaster Risk Reduction

ECan Environment Canterbury

EWS Early Warning System

GIS Geographic Information Systems

GNS Science Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences

KDC CDEM Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence Emergency Management

LCD Least Cost Distance

LINZ Land Information New Zealand

MCDEM Ministry of Civil Defence & Emergency Management (now NEMA)

MMI Modified Mercalli Index

NEMA National Emergency Management Agency

NIWA National Institute for Water and Atmospheric Research

NWS National Warning System

NZCD New Zealand Civil Defence

PTWC Pacific Tsunami Warning Centre

RMF Risk Management Framework

UC University of Canterbury

UN United Nations

UNDRR United Nations Office for Disaster Risk Reduction (formally known as UNISDR

UNESCO United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization

# **Table of Contents**

	•			
		_	ments ms	
		•	ents	
		_		
Cha	apter	1: Int	roduction	1
1	l.1	Rese	earch context	1
1	L.2	Rese	earch aims and objectives	3
1	L.3	Con	ceptual approach to disaster risk reduction (DRR)	5
	1.3	.1	Disaster risk reduction (DRR) and disaster risk management	5
	1.3	.2	DRR terminology	5
	1.3	.3	Global DRR and DRM	7
	1.3	.4	DRM in New Zealand	8
	1.3	.5	Conceptual Framework; the Risk management Framework	10
1	L.4	Intro	oduction of the case study: Kaikōura, New Zealand	12
	1.4	.1	2016 M <sub>w</sub> 7.8 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami	16
	1.4	.2	Emergency response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake	18
1	l.5	Rese	earch methodology and thesis structure	19
Cha	apter	2: Lit	erature review	21
2	2.1	Tsur	nami hazard assessment	21
2	2.2	New	zealand tsunami hazard and risk assessment	23
2	2.3	New	zealand tsunami risk management	26
2	2.4	Evad	cuation modelling approaches and New Zealand evacuation modelling literature	33
2	2.5	Glob	oal and New Zealand tsunami evacuation behaviour research	38
2	2.6	Rese	earch gaps	43
Cha	apter	3: Tsı	unami evacuation behaviour and movements following the 2016 Kaikōura	
ear	thqu	ake aı	nd tsunami	44
3	3.1	Intro	oduction	44
3	3.2	201	6 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami evacuation survey methodology	45
	3.2	.1	Evacuation survey development	45
	3.2	.2	Evacuation survey distribution, collection and analysis	48
3	3.3	Surv	ey results	49
	3.3	.1	Survey response rate	50
	3.3	.2	Kaikōura survey return demographics	51
	3.3	.3	2016 Kaikōura earthquake warning and evacuation decision-making	52

3.3	3.4 2016 Kaikōura evacuation behaviour and movements	61
3.3	Risk awareness and preparedness influence on evacuation behaviour	69
3.4	Discussion	72
3.4	4.1 Tsunami risk awareness	72
3.4	4.2 Response phase	74
3.4	4.3 Evacuation movement phase	76
3.4	4.4 Additional phase	80
3.5	Recommendations	80
3.6	Limitations	82
3.7	Future research and opportunities	84
3.8	Conclusion	85
3.9	Summary and link to next chapter	86
Chapte	r 4: Network evacuation model for Kaikōura	87
4.1	Introduction	87
4.2	Network-based modelling evacuation planning tool method	88
4.3	2.1 Hazard assessment	89
4.3	2.2 Exposure assessment	89
4.	2.3 ArcCASPER Network-based evacuation model	91
4.3	Results	96
4.3	3.1 Results of the tsunami exposure assessment	96
4.3	Results of the ArcCASPER vehicle evacuation model	98
4.4	Discussion	104
4.4	4.1 Discussion on tsunami exposure assessment	105
4.4	4.2 Discussion on ArcCASPER evacuation modelling results	106
4.4	4.3 Limitations and recommendations the evacuation modelling framework	111
4.5	Chapter summary	112
Chapte	r 5: Summary and recommendations	114
5.1	Summary and conclusions	114
	1.1 Improving current understanding of immediate reactions and evacuation be a near-source tsunami threat (Chapter 3)	
	1.2 Development of a network-based based vehicle evacuation model for Kaikō wnship (chapter 4)	
5.2	Key recommendations	116
5.3	Key recommendations for future work	117
Refere	nces	119
Δnnen	dices	131

Appendix D: Field Investigations GPS tracking	182
Appendix C: 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami official Civil Defence Emergency Man official responses.	•
B3 Kaikōura High School ShakeOut Observations – Summarised report	176
B2 Human Ethics Committee - low risk student application form	169
B1 Human Ethics Committee approval letter	168
Appendix B: Kaikōura High School 2018 ShakeOut observations	168
A4 Tabulated results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey	158
A3 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami information sheet and survey	146
A2 Human Ethics Committee – Low risk student application form	132
A1 Human Ethics Committee approval letter	131
Appendix A: Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey	131

# Table of Figures

Figure 1.3-1: Risk assessment process. (Source: PreventionWeb, 2017)
Figure 1.3-2: New Zealand Civil Defence and Emergency Management Framework. Retrieved form
the National Emergency Management Agency (n.d.)
Figure 1.3-3: New Zealand Risk Management Framework. Retrieved from Standards New Zealand
(2009)
Figure 1.4-1: Case study context map of place names mentioned throughout this thesis. The insert
map is an aerial map of Kaikōura13
Figure 1.4-2: Kaikōura tsunami risk management initiative - Kaikōura community disaster
preparedness workshop (Photo source: Kaikōura District Council, (2020)15
Figure 1.4-3: Kaikōura tsunami risk management initiatives - Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zones
(definitions of tsunami evacuation zones are presented on the map and in Chapter 2. Source:
Canterbury Maps (2020)
Figure 1.4-4: Regional propagation pattern of the tsunami generated by the 2016 Kaikōura
earthquake. Red colour represents higher tsunami wave amplitude. Red dots show GeoNet tsunami
gauges. Source: Handtless et al. 2018
Figure 1.4-5: Official warning response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (Source:
Thomas, 2017)
Figure 2.1-1: Tsunami wave terminology (MCDEM, 2016)21
Figure 2.1-2: Tsunami damage observed from the 2015 Illepel tsunami (left) and the 2016 Kaikōura
earthquake and tsunami (right). Photos provided by James Williams
Figure 2.1-3: Global tsunami sources from earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, landslides, and other
causes from 1610 BC to AD 2017. The colour of the shape represents the number of deaths (red=
very many deaths). Source: NCEI, ITC, (NOAA) 201822
Figure 2.2-1: Tsunami sources that New Zealand is exposed to (MCDEM, 2018a). Region 1 represents
local source tsunami (0-1hr) tsunami, region 2 represents regional source tsunami (1-3 hours), and
region 3 is distant source tsunami around the Pacific Ring of Fire (>3 hours)24
Figure 2.2-2: Left: Sources of tsunami that have affected New Zealand since 1835 (Power, 2013).
Right: 'Map distribution of tsunami impacts in New Zealand by region. The box for each region shows
approximate population in the present day, the number of tsunami impact events (wave symbol),
and the number of observations (eye symbol)' (Downes et al. 2017)25
Figure 2.3-1: Process used to inform CDEM Group tsunami evacuation planning. Note, technical
Information on tsunami loads and effects on vertical evacuation structures is not included on this
diagram, however, should be considered for future evacuation planning. Retrieved from Ministry of
Civil Defence & Emergency Management (MCDEM, 2016)28
Figure 2.3-2: National tsunami and earthquake public education campaigns. Top: Get Ready, Get
Thru - What's the plan Stan. This campaign encourages households, work place, schools and marae,
to develop a plan before an emergency happens. Bottom: education campaign on protective actions
to take if New Zealand experiences a large natural warning Source: MCDEM (n.d)29
Figure 2.3-3: New Zealand tsunami evacuation signs (in Technical Standard [TS 01/08]) (MCDEM,
2008). Left: tsunami sign that directs evacuees to safe zones. Right: tsunami sign informs people on
what tsunami evacuation zones they are in, and includes descriptions of natural warnings30
Figure 2.3-4 Tsunami information board for Island Bay in Wellington
Figure 2.3-5: Example of blue lines in Wellington (Source: Fraser et al. 2014)32
Figure 2.4-1: Tsunami evacuation modelling techniques. Left: Agent-based tsunami evacuation
model for Petone, Lower Hutt. New Zealand, Red dots represent individual evacuees and purple

indicates likely congestion. Right: Least-cost distance model for Petone, Lower Hutt, New Zealand.
Evacuation time estimates a presented based on topographic characteristics34
Figure 2.4-2: Arc CASPER Network Evacuation model for Riversdale Beach in the Wairarapa (Evans, 20236
Figure 2.4-3 Advantages and disadvantages of three evacuation modelling methods. Source: Tilley, 201837
Figure 2.5-1: tsunami evacuation planning process developed by Makinoshima et al. 202039
Figure 3.2-1: Kaikōura study area and outline (red) of evacuation survey letterbox drop
Figure 3.3-1: Map displaying approximate residence locations of survey participants overlaid with
official CDEM tsunami evacuation zones. See Chapter 1 for explanation on Canterbury's tsunami evacuation zones
Figure 3.3-2: Bar graph representing respondent's perceived shaking intensity of the 2016 Kaikōura
earthquake
Figure 3.3-3: Map displaying USGS dissolved Shakemap of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake overlaid with respondent's perceived shaking intensity. Respondents perceived shaking intensity is colour coded in respect to the USGS Shakemap intensity colours
Figure 3.3-4: Box and whisker graph displaying the range of perceived shaking duration estimations.
The red dashed line represents the 121 second instrumental earthquake shaking of the 2016
Kaikōura earthquake. The 'x' represents the median value of perceived earthquake shaking 55 Figure 3.3-5: Wordle representing the most frequent words (words that are bold and larger) of
respondents explanations of their immediate actions following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake56
Figure 3.3-6: Bar graph displaying pre-evacuation actions following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. 57
Figure 3.3-7: Pie chart representing the proportion of respondents who evacuated and did not
evacuate following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake58
Figure 3.3-8: Bar graph displaying survey respondent's main reasoning for evacuating following the
2016 Kaikōura earthquake60
Figure 3.3-9: Bar graph displaying tsunami warning sources during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake61
Figure 3.3-10: Geospatial heat map representing respondent's evacuation routes and common safe
zone locations during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (Township scale). Arrows indicate the directions
of where respondents evacuated to along the road network
Figure 3.3-11: Geospatial heat map representing respondent's evacuation routes and common safe
zone locations along Kaikōura Peninsula during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Arrows indicate
directions of where respondents evacuated along the road network. The star represents where a
lamp post fell cross the road during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake64
Figure 3.3-12: Box and whisker graph displaying the range and mean (X) traffic speed estimates of
vehicles during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake66
Figure 3.3-13: Correlation graph on the proportion of respondents who evacuated vs. the time at
which they evacuated67
Figure 3.3-14: Correlation graph of survey respondent's time taken to evacuate to safety vs. the
distance to reach safety68
Figure 3.3-15: Bar graph of survey respondents reasoning's for returning from safe zone evacuation
points
Figure 3.3-16: Bar graph of respondents level of tsunami knowledge and the need to evacuate prior
to and following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake70
Figure 3.3-17: Sources of information on tsunami hazard and evacuation prior to the 2016 Kaikōura
earthquake71
Figure 3.3-18: Earthquake and tsunami preparedness actions taken before and after the 2016
Kaikōura earthquake72

Figure 3.4-1: Percentage of respondents who evacuated compared with their perceived shaking
intensity and shaking duration of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake75
Figure 3.4-2: Living situation influence on the time taken to evacuate during the 2016 Kaikōura
earthquake78
Figure 3.4-3: Geospatial map displaying alternative evacuation routes for a future earthquake and
tsunami event
Figure 4.2-1: Methodological framework to develop a novel evacuation planning tool. The process
identifies key input components to inform the development of the evacuation planning tool88
Figure 4.2-2: Overview of ArcCASPER network analyst evacuation model process. From Tilley (2018).
Figure 4.2-3: Evacuation settings applied to Kaikōura vehicle evacuation model. See text for details.
95
Figure 4.3-1: Exposure inventory of building assets located in Kaikōura, based on Kaikōura tsunami
evacuation zones
Figure 4.3-2: Map showing allocated route and evacuation zone catchment densities. Five
destination zones are identified (Cemetery, Water Towers, Takahanga Marae, Seaview and Churchill
Park), colours are coordinated with evacuees and allocated routes to those safe zone destinations.
Figure 4.3-3: Map showing evacuation route densities. Each road segment was assigned a weight
value (line thickness) to represent vehicle count. Bold lines represent high traffic density
Figure 4.3-4: Map displaying predicted evacuation travel time along each road segment. Red
represents greater evacuation time, yellow represents quicker time to travel along road segments.
Figure 4.3-5: Map displaying predicted evacuation travel time to reach safety for every household
located in the township. Dark red represents longer evacuation time, yellow represents quicker
evacuation times
to show detailed evacuee (vehicle) points. The red dots represent simulation of vehicles along the
road network of 6 second intervals104
Todu network of a second intervals102
List of Tables
Table 3.3-1: Statistics on survey distribution, returns and survey response rate
Table 3.3-2: Demographic composition of the Kaikōura Township and survey respondents
Table 3.3-3: Table displaying evacuation rates of respondents who lived in and out of a tsunami
evacuation zone at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake
Table 4.2-1: Open source data used for the exposure inventory
Table 4.3-1: Tsunami exposure assessment for population, building assets and road network located
within Kaikōura orange tsunami evacuation zone96

## Chapter 1: Introduction

#### 1.1 Research context

A tsunami is a natural phenomenon consisting of a series of waves when a large volume of water becomes displaced that can cause considerable impacts on exposed coastal communities (Power, 2013). Tsunami occur in a range of magnitudes from various sources (Power, 2013) (defined in Chapter 2). Recent examples include the catastrophic and more infrequent events such as the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami, and the more frequent, smaller and less damaging events such as the 2009 Samoa tsunami, the 2015 Illapel tsunami (Chile), and the 2016 Kaikōura tsunami (Arcos et al. 2019; Fraser et al. 2013; Power, 2013). Tsunami impacts depend on magnitude, source, and coastal topography. In addition to the direct consequences on coastal environments, people, critical infrastructure and property, tsunami impacts include indirect, ongoing social and economic consequences (Power, 2013). Globally, in the last two decades, tsunami events have caused more than 250,000 fatalities and resulted in USD\$280 billion in damages (Imamura et al. 2019).

During an earthquake-tsunami event, evacuation is considered the primary risk reduction strategy for preventing casualties (MCDEM, 2016; Power et al. 2019; UNESCO, 2011). Empirical data on evacuation behaviour and movements during and after past tsunami events has the potential to inform future disaster risk management and evacuation response planning. To date however, the majority of evacuation behaviour research has focused on specific aspects of evacuation response such as tsunami preparedness, risk awareness, or evacuation intentions (Arce et al. 2017; Currie et al. 2014; Couling, 2014; Dhellemmes et al. 2016: Fraser et al. 2013; Johnston et al. 2013; Johnston et al. 2003; Makinoshima et al. 2020). There have been limited contributions to capturing a comprehensive overview of a 'real-event' complete evacuation process to enhance knowledge on response to warnings and evacuation decision-making, evacuation movements, and additional activity after evacuation (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Similarly, although tsunami evacuation modelling has been an increasingly applied risk management tool to assess evacuation potential for at risk communities, very few studies have used 'real-event' evacuation parameters to improve realistic evacuation modelling outputs (Kubisch et al. 2019; Kubisch et al. 2020; Makinoshima et al. 2016; Wood et al. 2018).

This Master of Science addresses this gap in the research with a case study analysing the broader evacuation in the small New Zealand coastal town of Kaikōura following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami. This tsunami was considered a moderate event, with a maximum wave run up of 6.9

metres measured at Goose Bay, south of Kaikōura, and is the latest of a number of tsunami to impact the Kaikōura coast, from local, regional and distant tsunami sources (GeoNet, n.d; Power et al. 2017). Kaikōura is a seaside settlement, located in the northern Canterbury region on the east coast of New Zealand's South Island. With a total resident population of 2,898 (Statistics New Zealand, 2018a), and positioned where the main North-South highway hugs the coast, Kaikōura is a popular tourist destination, hosting over 125,000 international and domestic visitors annually (Cradock-Henry & Fountain 2019; Statistics New Zealand, 2018b). The location of this small town and the large volume of visitors travelling through Kaikōura increase the settlement's exposure to tsunami hazard risk.

In addition to addressing a gap in global understanding of evacuation behaviours in the immediate aftermath of an earthquake and tsunami, the findings of this research will be of particular value in New Zealand, and to those involved in planning to reduce the risk posed, in this country, by near source tsunami.

Empirical evidence of historical and modern tsunami records, including oral histories, indicate that New Zealand has a long history of tsunami (De Lange & Healy, 1986; Downes et al. 2017; GNS Science, 2014; King et al. 2007; King, 2015). New Zealand's entire coastline is at risk to tsunami hazard from local, regional, and distant sources (Power, 2013), and has experienced frequent tsunami events from the Peruvian subduction zone (South America). This country's greatest tsunami threat, however, is posed by a local source tsunami generated by an earthquake along the Hikurangi margin (East Coast Lab, 2020; Power 2013). This subduction zone starts near Kaikōura and extends up the east coast of the North Island, and is capable of producing earthquakes greater than Magnitude 9.0, producing tsunami comparable to that generated by the 2011 Mw 9 Great East Japan earthquake (East Coast Lab, 2020; Power, 2013) (discussed further in Chapter 2).

New Zealand's exposure to tsunami hazard risk requires effective disaster risk reduction strategies to increase resilience and community's awareness and preparedness for future hazard events. Disaster risk assessments including understanding response and evacuation behaviour of past events are an essential foundation for decision-making processes and the basis of informing disaster risk reduction plans, policy and guidance (UNESCO, 2020). To date, New Zealand tsunami risk management initiatives such as evacuation planning has been informed from global practice and international research findings (Jack & Schoenfeld, 2017). New Zealand has experienced a series of poorly executed warnings and evacuations from over the past 15 years in the lead up to the Kaikōura tsunami, including the 2009 Samoa and 2010 Chile events. The tsunami generated by the Kaikōura earthquake provided a valuable opportunity to conduct research to better understand response and evacuation behaviours

in this recent New Zealand context. Findings constitute empirical real-world evidence to inform evacuation modelling, and emergency response planning.

### 1.2 Research aims and objectives

This thesis has two aims. The first aim is to develop an empirical evidence-base that provides a comprehensive understanding of human evacuation behaviours and dynamics following this recent New Zealand earthquake and tsunami event. The second aim is to improve current evacuation modelling methods through the input of real-event evacuation behaviour characteristics. Understanding human behaviour characteristics of a local source event, and using these to inform more accurate and useful tsunami evacuation modelling will help to inform national and global tsunami evacuation preparedness and will contribute to mitigating the number of casualties in future events through appropriate tsunami risk management and response initiatives.

This thesis uses the following two objectives to address these aims:

1) using the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami as a case study to understand immediate reactions to natural warnings and evacuation behaviour dynamics (Chapter 3). This objective was achieved through utilisation of a questionnaire survey developed in collaboration with natural hazard risk management and emergency management practitioners actively involved in response phase of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami.

2) apply evacuation response behaviour and movements to inform realistic rules and interactions for the development of a network-based tsunami evacuation model to produce evacuation time indications (Chapter 4).

The methodology used to answer the thesis research objectives is described in detail below;

**Objective 1**: Understand evacuation response behaviour and evacuation dynamics of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami.

Develop a new survey tool with natural hazard risk management and emergency management
practitioners to collect data on the immediate response and evacuation behaviour of a localsource earthquake event. This includes understanding of warning and evacuation decisionmaking, evacuation movements and associated dynamics, and risk awareness influence on
evacuation response.

- Perform a statistical and geospatial analysis of self-reported survey data to review response
  actions and evacuation behaviours of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura
  earthquake and tsunami.
- Conduct a comparative analysis of survey data with other national and global studies.
- Present broad evacuation behavioural trends and characterise factors that were influential for evacuation decision-making.
- Present a dataset to inform tsunami risk management strategies for at-risk communities in New Zealand and globally.

**Objective 2**: Develop an evacuation modelling framework and test by modelling likely evacuation behaviours of coastal Kaikōura residents, to ensure that it is applicable to other communities at risk from tsunami in New Zealand and international. This will be achieved by integrating:

- Develop a population and asset inventory to define the population and assets exposed within Kaikōura's tsunami evacuation zones. Use this synthesised exposure inventory as base data for the development of a network-based model.
- The survey dataset from objective 1 to inform real event evacuation rules and interactions for the network-based model.

#### 1.3 Conceptual approach to disaster risk reduction (DRR)

#### 1.3.1 Disaster risk reduction (DRR) and disaster risk management

"Disaster risk reduction is aimed at preventing new and reducing existing disaster risk and managing residual risk, all of which contribute to strengthening resilience and therefore to the achievement of sustainable development" (UNISDR, 2017). Disaster risk management defined as "the application of disaster risk reduction policies and strategies to prevent new disaster risk, reduce existing disaster risk and manage residual risk, contributing to the strengthening of resilience and reduction of disaster losses (UNISDR, 2017). In order to achieve the goal of DRR, integrated and inter-disciplinary measures that prevent and reduce hazard exposure and vulnerability to disaster, increase preparedness for response and recovery and strengthen resilience should be implemented at all levels (UNISDR, 2015). Risk information provides a critical foundation for managing disasters (GFDRR, 2014). Risk can be expressed qualitatively and or quantitatively, where it is derived as a combination of the likelihood and/or magnitude of the hazard and its consequences (UNISDR, 2015). Risk is typically characterised into three principal components; hazard, exposure and vulnerability (Figure 1.3-1).

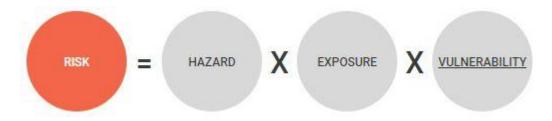


Figure 1.3-1: Risk assessment process. (Source: PreventionWeb, 2017).

Disaster risk assessment is the systematic processes used to determine the nature and extent of risk, by considering hazards, and evaluating exposure and vulnerability of people, property, critical infrastructure and the environment (UNDP, 2010; UNISDR, 2015) (Figure 1.3-1). Risk assessments are fundamental for effective DRR decision-making and policy and practice (UNDP, 2010, UNISDR, 2015).

#### 1.3.2 DRR terminology

Hazard refers to 'a process, phenomenon or human activity that may cause loss of life, injury or other health impacts, damage to property, economic and social disruption or environmental degradation (UNISDR, 2017). Hazards are described by their frequency of occurrence and/or intensity (UNISDR, 2017).

**Disasters** can occur when a natural hazard such as an earthquake, landslide, tsunami, volcanic eruption which has an associated likelihood and intensity, interacts with societal conditions of exposure, vulnerability and capacity triggering serious disruption of a community and causing: human, material, economic and/or environmental losses and impacts (GFDRR, 2014; UNISDR, 2017).

**Exposure** refers to "the situation of people, infrastructure, housing, production capacities and other tangible human assets located in hazard-prone areas," (UNISDR, 2017).

**Vulnerability** can be defined as the "conditions determined by physical, social, economic and environmental factors or processes which increase the susceptibility of an individual, a community, assets or systems to the impacts of hazards," (UNISDR, 2017). For example, conditions may include demographic composition such as income, insurance, age, gender, as well as dependence on resources or services. Vulnerability can be reduced by capacities.

Capacities are the set of strengths, attributes and resources an individual, household or community may have access to, that allow them to resist, cope, and recover from a disaster (Wisner et al., 2004; UNISDR, 2017). These resources may include understandable and available information, practised evacuations, and having skills and assets that allow self-sufficiency and that allow adaptiveness.

**Risk** is defined by UNISDR as ""The potential loss of life, injury, or destroyed or damaged assets which could occur to a system, society or a community in a specific period of time, determined probabilistically as a function of hazard, exposure, vulnerability and capacity." (UNISDR, 2017).

**Impact** refers to the effects of a hazardous event (UNISDR, 2017). Impacts are typically negative but can be positive. In the context of DRM, impact refers to what might happen to people and/or assets during an event (GFDRR, 2014).

**Preparedness** involves building knowledge and capacities to manage disasters (UNISDR, 2009). It can be achieved or facilitated by governments, communities, individuals, and organisations (UNISDR, 2009). To facilitate preparedness strategies, knowledge of the risk is required (GFDRR, 2014). Preparedness activities can be linked to the development of early warning systems, stockpiling supplies, contingency plans, and education and training (GFDRR, 2014; UNISDR, 2009).

**Resilience** is "the ability of a system, community or society exposed to hazards to resist, absorb, accommodate, adapt to, transform and recover from the effects of a hazard in a timely and efficient manner, including through the preservation and restoration of it's essential basic structures and functions through risk management" (UNISDR, 2017).

**Residual Risk** is the 'risk that remains after risk treatment has been applied to reduce the potential consequences' (MCDEM, 2019).

**Risk Perception** is a personal assessment of the consequences that may be caused by a hazard (Lindell, 2013). Risk perception is largely influenced by psychological, cultural, and social aspects (Dzialek, 2013; Fraser et al. 2016).

#### 1.3.3 Global DRR and DRM

Despite global efforts to mitigate or reduce impacts of disasters, the last two decades have seen geophysical and climate related disasters causing 1.3 million deaths, 4.4 billion people injured, homeless, displaced or in need of emergency assistance, and direct economic loss of US\$2,908 billion (CRED &UNISDR, 2018). Over half (56%) of total deaths were attributed to earthquake and tsunami events (CRED &UNISDR, 2018).

The United Nations Office for Disaster Risk Reduction (UNDRR, formerly UNISDR), is the DRR focal point for United Nations (UN) member states. The UNDRR coordinates international efforts and provides a platform for information exchange and supports the implementation of the Sendai Framework for Disaster Risk Reduction 2015-2030 (Sendai Framework). The Sendai Framework (which is the successor instrument to the Hyogo Framework for Action 2005-2015) provides a method to "achieve the substantial reduction of disaster risk and losses in lives, livelihoods and health and in the economic, physical, social, cultural and environmental assets of persons, businesses, communities and countries over the next 15 years" (UNISDR, 2015). The Sendai Framework outlines seven targets, and four priorities of action to prevent new and existing disaster risks. The four priorities of action are:

Priority one: "Understanding disaster risk;

**Priority two**: Strengthen disaster risk governance to manage disaster risk;

**Priority three**: Investing in disaster risk reduction for resilience;

**Priority four**: Enhancing disaster preparedness for effective response and "Build Back Better" in recovery, rehabilitation and reconstruction" (UNISDR, 2015).

In addition to the Sendai Framework, the UN's global 'Sustainable Development Goals' (SDG's) and the 'Paris Agreement on Climate Change' are existing global agenda agreements that align with the Sendai Framework's purpose to increase resilience for a more sustainable future (CRED &UNISDR, 2018).

This thesis seeks to contribute to Sendai priorities one: understanding disaster risk and four: enhancing disaster preparedness, by contributing an understanding of risk to population and relevant assets exposed to tsunami hazard in Kaikōura and present an empirical evacuation behavioural dataset to inform tsunami preparedness and response planning.

#### 1.3.4 DRM in New Zealand

New Zealand's hazard risk landscape is increasingly complex and uncertain (MCDEM, 2019). New Zealand is recognised internationally for its integrated approach to DRR and managing hazard risk through the applied effort over the 4Rs; reduction, readiness, response and recovery (IFRC, 2014; LGNZ, 2014). This approach includes coordinated investment and efforts to: identify, evaluate and reduce disaster risk impacts; implement community public education awareness and preparedness campaigns; implement early warning systems; and develop and apply effective risk management, response and recovery legislation (MCDEM, 2019).

#### The 4Rs:

- "Reduction identifying and analysing long-term risks to human life and property from hazards; taking steps to eliminate these risks if practicable, and if not, reducing the magnitude of their impact and the likelihood of their occurring;
- Readiness Developing operational systems and capabilities before a civil defence emergency
  happens; including self-help and response programmes for the general public, and specific
  programmes for emergency services, lifeline utilities and other agencies;
- Response actions taken immediately before, during, or directly after a civil defence emergency to save lives and protect property, and to help communities recover;
- Recovery the coordinated efforts and processes to bring about the immediate, medium and long-term holistic regeneration of a community following a civil defence emergency" (NEMA, n.d.a).

As a UN member state, the New Zealand Government has ratified the International Sendai Framework for Disaster Risk Reduction 2015-2030, which requires that governments implement the Framework, and report implementation progress on disaster risk management, including New Zealand's tsunami risk management. The Sendai Framework provides a method to build research outputs, to enhance capabilities and decision-making to plan and prepare across the 4Rs.

The statutory landscape that drives DRR in New Zealand at a national, regional and local level is represented by the CDEM framework (see Figure 1.3-2). Legislation that governs DRR in New Zealand includes the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002, the Resource Management Act 1991, the Building Act 2004, The Local Government and Official Information Meetings Act, and the Local Government Act 2002.

Recent global tsunami events (2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and 2011 Great East Japan tsunami) have reinforced the importance of improving scientific understanding of tsunami hazard risk assessment and implementation of tsunami risk management in New Zealand (MCDEM, 2016). The establishment

of New Zealand's national 'Tsunami Risk Management Programme' aims to support evidence-based, end-to-end tsunami risk management for New Zealand, through the implementation of early warning systems, national guidance and policy, and public education awareness (NEMA, n.d.b) (discussed further in Chapter 2). The programme draws on expertise from tsunami hazard research, risk assessments, risk management, planning, social science and public education across government and research agencies.

A number of agencies and organisations responsible for implementing DRR in New Zealand includes: the National Emergency Management Agency (formally known as the Ministry of Civil Defence & Emergency Management), the Ministry for the Environment, the Ministry for Business Innovation and Employment, the Department of Conservation, the Earthquake Commission, the National Infrastructure Unit (within Treasury), Regional councils, Territorial authorities, Crown Research Institutes (CRIs), CDEM groups, infrastructure lifelines groups, universities, commercial players such as insurance companies, reinsurers, and banks, as well as community groups, households and individuals (LGNZ, 2014).



Figure 1.3-2: New Zealand Civil Defence and Emergency Management Framework. Retrieved form the National Emergency Management Agency (n.d.).

In addition to the CDEM Framework and DRR legislation, New Zealand has recently developed a DRR strategy named the 'National Disaster Resilience Strategy' (MCDEM, 2019) which adheres to the CDEM Framework (see Figure 1.3-2) and sets out goals and objectives for Civil Defence Emergency Management to improve on how New Zealand responds to natural disasters and other emergencies.

The strategy sought to take a holistic approach to achieve a 'resilient' New Zealand over the next 10 years, with the primary goal to "strengthen the resilience of the nation by managing risks, being ready to respond and recover from emergencies, and by empowering and supporting individuals, organisations, and communities to act for themselves and others, for the safety and wellbeing of all" (MCDEM, 2019). The National Disaster Resilience Strategy sets out three main priorities:

- 1. Managing risk
- 2. Effective response and recovery from emergencies
- 3. Enabling, empowering and supporting community resilience

In the context of the National Disaster Resilience Strategy, this research seeks to contribute to all three priorities through identifying societal risk and contributing an evacuation behavioural dataset and evacuation model that builds on knowledge from past emergency events. The results of this thesis helps to increase the understanding of resident's response actions to natural warnings and preparedness actions as a results of national education campaigns and tsunami evacuation planning.

#### 1.3.5 Conceptual Framework; the Risk management Framework

The New Zealand Risk Management Framework (AS/NZ: 31000 Risk Management Framework) has been developed to provide a systematic and robust risk management approach, which aims to reduce risk through nationally standardised processes of risk identification, risk analysis, risk evaluation and risk treatment (Standards New Zealand, 2009). Since this standardised process is used by local authorities, CDEM Groups, infrastructure lifeline agencies, research institutes and the private sector, it facilitates a coordinated approach to risk management across these sectors.

The AS/NZ: 31000 Risk Management Framework is the conceptual approach informing this Masters research (Figure 1.3-3). It structures the assessment of tsunami risk in Kaikōura, the analysis of the immediate evacuation behaviour of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, and informs the network-based modelling developed using this empirical data from immediate evacuation behaviours following the Kaikōura earthquake. Using the New Zealand risk management framework in this thesis, aligns with best practice in New Zealand emergency management sector, where the embedment of this framework is contributing to emergency management, specifically tsunami risk management.

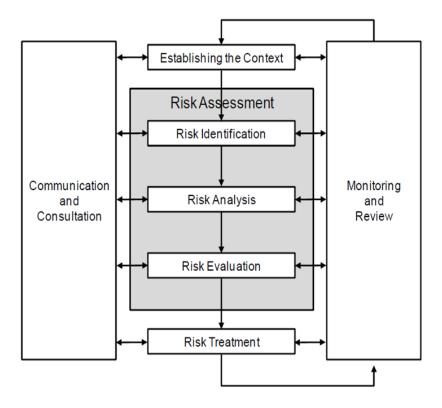


Figure 1.3-3: New Zealand Risk Management Framework. Retrieved from Standards New Zealand (2009).

The terms used in the risk management framework are defined by the following equation:

#### Risk = Hazard x Vulnerability

The **risk assessment** framework is used as the conceptual basis of this thesis, which has been mapped across the following three (AS/NZS) risk assessment phases.

1. Risk identification: the first phase of risk assessment consists of identifying all the elements of risk, including the potential extent and magnitude of hazards and possible social consequences for the population at risk from the hazard (Standards New Zealand, 2009). In the tsunami context, risk identification is achieved through reviewing relevant literature on tsunami hazard assessments, including inundation modelling, to inform evacuation zone mapping and identify the populations and assets located within those hazard zones (UNESCO, 2020).

The risk identification conducted as part of this Masters research included identifying Kaikōura's exposed populations, and assets located in official tsunami evacuation zones, and analysing resident populations, buildings and road networks (Chapter 4).

2 **Risk analysis and risk evaluation:** the second phase involves two stages of risk analysis and evaluation, to further investigate and determine the level of risk the population is exposed to: acceptable, unacceptable, or tolerable, to identify actions that if taken will reduce impacts and therefore risk (AS/NZS, 2009). Understanding the vulnerability of exposed populations is

necessary to establish the foundation for risk analysis and evaluation. Factors that can contribute to potential vulnerability include demographic composition e.g. the age and gender and health of household members, evacuation delay times, evacuation infrastructure and road evacuation capacity.

In this Masters research the risk analysis and evaluation phase involved two components. Firstly, self-reported survey data concerning the immediate response of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami to evaluate evacuation potential against tsunami hazard risk was analysed (Chapter 3). Then this data was used to develop a network-based tsunami evacuation model framework which was tested to analyse and evaluate evacuation time estimates for the Kaikōura community (Chapter 4).

3 **Risk treatment**: after a risk assessment has been carried out, assessment of the treatment options to reduce overall risk to the affected population is undertaken. Tsunami risk treatment strategies can include structural initiatives (vertical evacuation structures, resilient evacuation infrastructure, tsunami defence systems), and non-structural initiatives (early warning systems, public education campaigns, and evacuation planning).

The treatment measures reviewed in this Masters research are non-structural, since the focus is on evacuation response planning. The findings are expected to contribute to risk treatment by providing an empirical dataset detailing immediate reactions to warnings and evacuation decision-making and behaviours following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami, and a network-based comprehensive evidence-based evacuation modelling framework. Both are expected to be of value to those involved in tsunami evacuation planning.

#### 1.4 Introduction of the case study: Kaikōura, New Zealand

Kaikōura is a seaside settlement located in the north of the Canterbury region, on the east coast of New Zealand's South Island, with a resident population of 2,898 in 2018 (Statistics NZ, 2018; see Figure 1.4-1). Known for its cultural significance, renowned scenery, ecosystems and adventure experiences (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019; Hendtlass, et al. 2018), the Kaikōura district motto is 'Where the mountains meet the sea' (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019; Kaikōura District Council, 2017). As this would suggest, this settlement provides abundant opportunities for recreation and wildlife viewing that have made it a popular destination for international and domestic visitors (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019), hosting over 125,000 tourist visitors annually (over the last 5 years), including both day stops and longer visits (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019; Simmons et al. 2017; Statistics New Zealand,

2017). The popularity of the destination is also due in large part to its location on State Highway 1 (SH1) halfway between Christchurch (the largest city in the South Island) and Picton (the sole departure point for ferries to the North Island). The main north-south highway in the South Island, and the only route that hugs the east coast, this road is the most travelled for tourists traversing the country (Fountain & Cradock-Henry, 2019). Tourism is a major economic driver in Kaikōura, with approximately half of the local workforce (50.4%) directly employed in the tourism industry (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019; Simmons et al. 2017). The region's tourism industry is highly seasonal; the months between December and April experience high visitor population counts, however winter months experience a decline in visitor numbers (Fountain & Cradock-Henry 2019; Simmons et al. 2017).



Figure 1.4-1: Case study context map of place names mentioned throughout this thesis. The insert map is an aerial map of Kaikōura.

The Kaikoura district is exposed to multiple natural hazards including earthquakes, landslides (including submarine), floods, wildfire, storms, and tsunami (Kaikōura District Council, 2020). Prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (discussed in section 1.4.2), there had been a clear recognition of tsunami risk in Kaikōura (Barryman, 2005; Mueller et al. 2019: NIWA, 2015:2004; Walters et al. 2006a:b). A number of studies have conducted numerical modelling to determine inundation extents and tsunami wave characteristics (Barryman, 2005; Lane et al. 2014; Muller et al. 2019: NIWA, 2015; 2004; Walters et al. 2006a:b). Findings indicate that there are three possible sources that put Kaikōura at high risk from tsunami. A major earthquake rupture on the Hikurangi Subduction zone is expected to generate a large near source tsunami that will inundate low lying areas on the east coasts of both the North and South islands, likely to impact Kaikōura within 10 – 30 minutes or so hours, depending on source location (Mueller et al. 2019). Nearer source events pose more immediate risks. A submarine landslide generated in the Kaikōura canyon, (approximately 1 kilometre off the coast of the settlement ), and seismic ruptures along local active faults that extend off the coast, such as the Kekerunga Bank Fault and the Wairarapa faults are particularly dangerous due to the proximity of the tsunami source (NIWA, 2015; Walter et al. 2006a:b). Scientists estimate that local earthquake and/or submarine landslides could generate tsunami waves that could reach Kaikōura's coastline in a matter of minutes (Walters et al. 2006a:b). Although a tsunami generated by a submarine landslide in the Kaikōura canyon or a local fault rupture poses more immediate risk, the potential impact from a tsunami generated from an earthquake rupture on the Hikurangi subduction zone is considered a possible 'worst-case scenario'.

To address the immediate risk to tsunami, risk reduction and preparedness initiatives have been implemented within the Kaikōura community over the last 10 years (H Jack, Natural Hazard Analyst, Environment Canterbury, pers. Comm). Tsunami risk management initiatives include community disaster preparedness workshops (see Figure 1.4-2), public education awareness campaigns (Long or Strong, Get Gone), evacuation drills (ShakeOut), and implementation of tsunami evacuation zones (Kaikōura District Council, 2020; Figure 1.4-3) (New Zealand tsunami risk management initiatives are presented further in Chapter 2).

Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence Emergency Management (KDC CDEM) motto is 'Prepared not scared' (Kaikōura District Council, 2020). This motto means 'preparing the community so that residents can take care of themselves, others and visitors in future emergency events (Kaikōura District Council, 2020). KDC CDEM provides three key messages to prepare for an emergency 1) make a plan, 2) know your tsunami survival, and 3) know where to get information from. Kaikōura's tsunami survival education encourages residents and visitors to identify if they are located in a tsunami

evacuation zone, if so, know what to do and where to go e.g. identify evacuation routes and move immediately to high ground or further inland if a long and/or strong earthquake is felt, hear unusual sounds from the sea or observe a sudden rise or fall in sea level (Kaikōura District Council, 2020). KDC CDEM, encourage residents and visitors to not wait for an official warning and use natural cues as the first point of warning as this may be their only warning before a tsunami reaches land, and to identify if they live, work, or play in a tsunami evacuation zone (Kaikōura District Council, 2020).

"If you feel a long (more than one minute) or a strong (hard to stand up) earthquake, leave the red and orange evacuation zones immediately. Do not wait for an official warning, sirens, an emergency mobile alert or for someone to tell you to go. Stay out of the zone until you are told it is safe to go back" (Environment Canterbury, 2020).



Figure 1.4-2: Kaikōura tsunami risk management initiative - Kaikōura community disaster preparedness workshop (Photo source: Kaikōura District Council, (2020).



Figure 1.4-3: Kaikōura tsunami risk management initiative- Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zones (definitions on tsunami evacuation zones are presented on the map and in Chapter 2. Source: Canterbury Maps (2020).

The frequent nature of visitors travelling through or stopping in Kaikōura, and potential limited knowledge of local hazard risk, increases Kaikōura's district exposure to natural hazards, in particular the immediate threat of tsunami. This was observed during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

#### 1.4.1 2016 M<sub>w</sub> 7.8 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami

At 12:02:56 a.m. on November 14, 2016 (NZDT) a magnitude M<sub>w</sub> 7.8 earthquake ruptured in Wairua, near Kaikōura, in the South Island of New Zealand. Although the epicentre of the earthquake originated on land, the tectonically complex event led the earthquake to rapidly spread north-east off shore, rupturing approximately 21 faults (Borrero & Lane, 2018; Hamling et al. 2017). The resulting extended multiple-fault ruptures generating New Zealand's largest local source tsunami since the 1947 Gisborne earthquake and tsunami (Borrero & Lane, 2018; Power et al. 2017). The rupture lasted nearly 2 minutes and was widely felt throughout New Zealand. The tsunami risk prompted evacuation of coastal communities of both the North and South islands of New Zealand (Kardos, 2017). The

resulting waves were measured as far south as Banks Peninsula in the South Island, and observed as far north as Castle Point in the North Island (GeoNet, n.d; see Figure 1.4-1). Wave run up heights measured 1-4 metres along the east coast, with the maximum wave run up height of 6.9 metres at Goose Bay, south of Kaikoura, making this earthquake induced tsunami a moderate event (Power et al. 2017; see Figure 1.4-1 and Figure 1.4-4). Fortunately, due in part to low tide and the sizeable earthquake uplift of sea-bed and coastline, the tsunami had minimal effects on coastal buildings and infrastructure, with the exception of a destroyed dwelling located on the Little Pigeon Bay beachfront, on Banks Peninsula (Lane et al. 2017; see Figure 2.1-2). However, earthquake shaking caused extensive damage to critical infrastructure, particularly close to fault ruptures, leaving some communities without access to road, rail, electricity, telecommunications and utilities such as domestic potable and rural stock water supplies (New Zealand Lifelines Council, 2017). State Highway 1 (SH1) road access was cut both north and south of the Kaikōura Township, placing excessive demands on the local community to assist response and recovery agencies managing human displacement in the days and weeks following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (Schoenfeld, 2018). Scientists have found that the repercussions of the earthquake and tsunami could have been even worse if the earthquake were to have occurred during the day and generated on an incoming tide (Handtless et al. 2018).

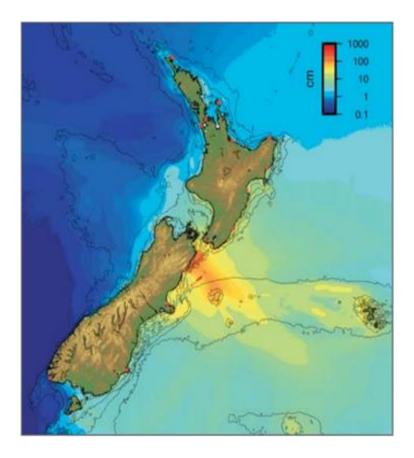


Figure 1.4-4: Regional propagation pattern of the tsunami generated by the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Red colour represents higher tsunami wave amplitude. Red dots show GeoNet tsunami gauges. Source: Handtless et al. 2018.

#### 1.4.2 Emergency response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake

The nature of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake required and contributed to an unusually complex disaster response operation (Schoenfeld, 2018), and this was particularly evident in the tsunami threat and tsunami warnings following the initial earthquake shaking (MCDEM, 2018a). As updated scientific data clarifying new earthquake characteristics became available it informed a number of rapid changes in tsunami threat and warning information (MCDEM, 2017b). Since the Kaikōura earthquake was a local-source event, Civil Defence Emergency Management (CDEM) had very little time (approx. 10 minutes) to issue an official warning before the first wave arrived at the Kaikōura coast (GeoNet, n.d.a). This time constraint meant that emergency management agencies needed to rely on the public awareness of the need to self-evacuate in response to natural warnings that had been generated through public messaging and education campaigns in the years leading up to this event. In any case, since all communication into, and out of, Kaikōura was severely disrupted by earthquake damage to telecommunications utilities, again meaning that in the immediate aftermath of the event the emergency response operation was heavily reliant on community awareness of the need to self-evacuate along the coast (Giovinazzi et al. 2017).

In the hours following the onset of earthquake shaking, government tsunami threat and tsunami warning advisories changed rapidly. Thirty minutes after the earthquake, a tsunami was observed on the Kaikōura tide gauge. The Ministry of Civil Defence and Emergency Management (now known as the National Emergency Management Agency, NEMA) issued a national advisory message at 12:40 a.m. stating that there was no tsunami threat to New Zealand, since the epicentre of the earthquake was onshore. Twenty minutes later, at 1.00 a.m. the same agency reversed that initial advice, by issuing a tsunami threat for all of New Zealand's eastern coastline, which was based on new information about the complex off-shore fault ruptures involved in the event (Kardos, 2017). The complexity of this messaging and the severity of the earthquake event is particularly important to understand how the public responded to this natural warnings (strong ground shaking), in the absence of clear and consistent messaging from authorities. A summary of the national, regional (Canterbury,) and christchurch official warning response is shown in the Figure 1.4-5 and a detailed decription is presented in Appendix C.

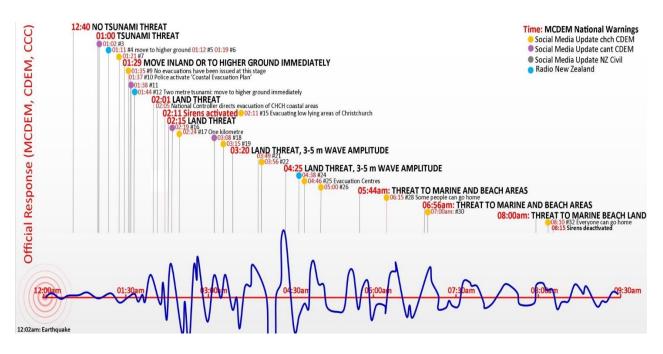


Figure 1.4-5: Official warning response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (Source: Thomas, 2017).

#### 1.5 Research methodology and thesis structure

This thesis comprises of five main chapters, with the risk management framework used as a conceptual basis throughout.

Chapter 1 establishes the context of the study, by detailing the aims and objectives of this thesis. The risk identification process starts by providing an overview of the study area and the effects of 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and the official emergency response.

Chapter 2 provides the basis for the risk identification process and this Masters research project with a comprehensive literature review of New Zealand tsunami hazard and risk assessment, tsunami risk management strategies implemented in New Zealand, evacuation survey research on the evacuation process derived from finding of past tsunami events globally and in New Zealand, and evacuation modelling research. This chapter identifies the gap in global tsunami evacuation research which informs the methodology for Chapter 3 and 4.

Chapter 3 reports risk analysis and evaluation findings, reporting on survey data concerning warning and evacuation decision-making, evacuation response and movements, and risk awareness influence on evacuation response self-reported by coastal Kaikōura residents who experienced the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Discussion relates these findings and the real-event evacuation behaviour they

reveal to the findings of other research that has analysed evacuation behaviour of at risk communities. Limitations of the methods are discussed, as are recommendations for future research.

Chapter 4 reports on the development of a tsunami exposure inventory, and a network-based tsunami evacuation model that include and are informed by the findings reported in Chapter 3. Findings on evacuation modelling outputs are discussed, and limitations are presented on the evacuation modelling planning framework, informing key future research recommendations.

Chapter 5 presents a summary and draws conclusions of this research. Key findings on understanding how Kaikōura resident's response to 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (natural warning) and the importance of including real event evacuation dynamics to inform and improve evacuation modelling techniques are presented. Key recommendations are provided for tsunami risk management applications and future work.

## Chapter 2: Literature review

This chapter presents a literature review framing the context of research objectives 1 and 2 of this thesis. First, the phenomena of tsunami is explained, including global impacts. This is followed by an overview of New Zealand's tsunami risk assessment and risk management strategies. Lastly, a literature review is presented on global evacuation behaviour to identify a global tsunami research gap.

#### 2.1 Tsunami hazard assessment

As noted in the introductory chapter, a tsunami is a natural phenomenon consisting of a series of waves when a large volume of water in the sea or in a lake becomes rapidly displaced" (Power, 2013). Tsunami are primarily generated by a large coastal or submarine earthquake, but can also be generated by submarine landslides, volcanic activity, and atmospheric blasts (Barryman, 2005; Power, 2013; Power & Leonard, 2013). The distance between tsunami waves (wavelength) can vary from several kilometres to over 400 kilometres and can result in wave travel speeds of up to 500km/h in deep water (Berryman, 2005). As the tsunami propagates into shallower waters near the coast, energy dissipates and wave amplitude increases however, the first tsunami wave may not be the largest and waves may continue to arrive many hours after the arrival of the first wave (Barryman, 2005; Power, 2013; see Figure 2.1-1 for tsunami wave terminology).

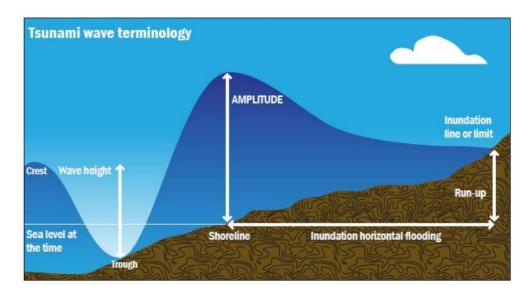


Figure 2.1-1: Tsunami wave terminology (MCDEM, 2016)

Tsunami are known to be one of the most powerful and destructive natural hazards to impact on coastal communities (Power, 2013). Tsunami can occur in a range of magnitudes from various sources (Power, 2013). Recent examples include catastrophic and more infrequent events such as the 2004

Indian Ocean tsunami, the 2010 Chile tsunami and the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami, and the more frequent, smaller and less damaging events such as the 2009 American Samoa tsunami, the 2015 Illapel earthquake and tsunami, the 2016 Kaikōura tsunami, and the 2019 Palu tsunami (Figure 2.1-2). The scale of impact is dependent on source, magnitude, and coastal topography (Power et al. 2013). In addition to the direct consequences on coastal environments, people, critical infrastructure and property, tsunami impacts include indirect, ongoing social and economic consequences (Power, 2013). In the past two decades, global tsunami events have caused more than 250,000 fatalities and resulted in USD\$280 billion in damages, see Figure 2.1-3 (Imamura et al. 2019).



Figure 2.1-2: Tsunami damage observed from the 2015 Illepel tsunami (left) and the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (right). Photos provided by James Williams.

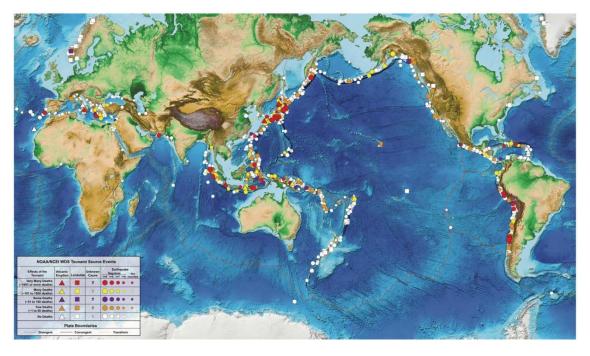


Figure 2.1-3: Global tsunami sources from earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, landslides, and other causes from 1610 BC to AD 2017. The colour of the shape represents the number of deaths (red= very many deaths). Source: NCEI, ITC, (NOAA) 2018

#### 2.2 New Zealand tsunami hazard and risk assessment

Over the last two decades, New Zealand continues to increase scientific understanding of tsunami hazard risk (Power, 2013). Numerical and empirical modelling methods have been used to determine potential source mechanisms, tsunami generation, propagation, flow velocity, depth, and inundation extents for coastal areas at risk to tsunami (King, 2015; Lane et al. 2014; Power et al. 2010; Walters et al. 2006). Local level tsunami risk modelling has advanced in recent years since the development of New Zealand's first National Probabilistic Tsunami Hazard Model in 2013 (Power, 2013). New Zealand's National Probabilistic Tsunami Hazard Model encompasses all likely sources that put New Zealand at high risk from tsunami. New Zealand classifies tsunami sources by their arrival time from the source to impact location, they are;

- 'Distant source defined by tsunamis that are expected to take longer than 3 hours to arrive at New Zealand's coast for example; South America, Cascadia subduction zone, or Japan.
- Regional source defined by tsunamis that are expected to have wave arrival times of 1-3
  hours to reach New Zealand's coast for example; Tonga-Kermadec trench and South New
  Hebrides trench.
- Local source defined by the immediate threats directly off New Zealand's coast with wave arrival times of less than an hour for example off shore faults, Hikurangi subduction zone and Puysegur subduction zone' (Power, 2013; Figure 2.2-1).



Figure 2.2-1: Tsunami sources that New Zealand is exposed to (MCDEM, 2018a). Region 1 represents local source tsunami (0-1hr) tsunami, region 2 represents regional source tsunami (1-3 hours), and region 3 is distant source tsunami around the Pacific Ring of Fire (>3 hours).

New Zealand has a relatively short written historical tsunami record of about 200 years. Despite this, New Zealand has been impacted by at least 80 events from 1835 to 2011 (Downes et al. 2017). Of these, 27 originated from distant sources, 12 from regional earthquake sources, 28 from local sources and 13 from unknown sources (Downes et al. 2017; Power, 2013). Figure 2.2-2 shows the location of historical tsunami events to impact New Zealand's regions.

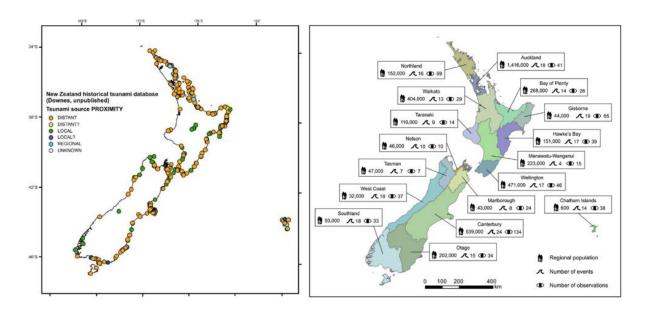


Figure 2.2-2: Left: Sources of tsunami that have affected New Zealand since 1835 (Power, 2013). Right: 'Map distribution of tsunami impacts in New Zealand by region. The box for each region shows approximate population in the present day, the number of tsunami impact events (wave symbol), and the number of observations (eye symbol)' (Downes et al. 2017)

Historic and pre-historic tsunami records indicate New Zealand has been affected by tsunami generated by landslides (including submarine) and volcanism (De Lange and Healy, 1986; GNS Science, 2014). New Zealand's greatest tsunami threat, however, is posed by a local source tsunami generated by an earthquake along the Hikurangi margin (East Coast Lab, 2020; Power, 2013). The subduction zone starts proximal to Kaikōura and extends up the east coast of the North Island offshore of Gisborne, and is capable of producing earthquakes greater than Magnitude 9.0, producing tsunami comparable to that generated by the 2011 Mw 9 Great East Japan earthquake (East Coast Lab, 2020; Fraser et al. 2016; Power, 2013). The immediate threat of a Hikurangi subduction zone tsunami, results in potentially short arrival times of approximately 10 minutes depending on the source of the rupture. This poses a great risk to coastal communities located in Canterbury, Marlborough, Wellington, Hawkes Bay and Gisborne (East Coast Lab, 2020).

New Zealand's coastal locations are favoured areas for human settlement, with 65% of New Zealand's population residing within 5 kilometres of the coast, compared with 40% globally residing within 100 kilometres of the coast (Statistics New Zealand, 2006, United Nations, 2017). The increasing trend of population migration to coastal areas and New Zealand's complex and dynamic tsunami hazardscape, increases New Zealand's exposure to tsunami. A recent study by Paulik et al. (2020) conducted New Zealand's first national-scale assessment on population and built-environment exposure located within New Zealand's tsunami evacuation zones (discussed in section 2.3). Key findings from this assessment estimate New Zealand has 'considerable' population, built-land, and asset exposure in tsunami evacuation zones. Just under 10% of New Zealand's population residing in 399,000 residential buildings are in evacuation zones, supported by a further 5400 critical buildings and 6300 kilometres

of road transport network. To address the increasing risk of New Zealand's exposure to tsunami, continual efforts are needed for effective tsunami risk management.

# 2.3 New Zealand tsunami risk management

The impacts of the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami reinforced the importance for effective early warning systems and tsunami risk management planning in New Zealand (MCDEM, 2016). In 2007, a National Tsunami Working Group was established to help guide New Zealand's tsunami risk management programme (MCDEM, 2008a). New Zealand's tsunami risk management programme supports evidence-based, end-to-end tsunami risk management across the 4Rs (NEMA, n.d.b). The programme draws on expertise from tsunami hazard research, risk assessments, risk management, planning, social science and public education across government and research agencies (NEMA, n.d.b). Projects listed under the programme include tsunami risk assessment, early warning systems and response, public education and awareness, and tsunami evacuation planning. These projects are designed to inform local and regional Civil Defence Emergency Management (CDEM) Groups to increase community level tsunami awareness and preparedness and knowledge on appropriate protective actions to take in future events (NEMA, n.d.b).

As mentioned in the introductory chapter, evacuation is considered the primary risk reduction strategy for preventing casualties (MCDEM, 2016). In New Zealand, evacuations are triggered by two types of tsunami warning:

- 1. Natural warnings such as a long and/or strong earthquake, loud or unusual noises from the sea, or sudden rise or fall in sea level. These warnings are the primary warning for local source tsunami (MCDEM, 2017a). Given the close proximity of local source tsunami and the short travel time (less than 1 hour), it is unlikely that there will be sufficient time to issue an official warning (Couling, 2014; Kardos, 2017; MCDEM, 2018a). For this reason, NEMA and local CDEM Groups advise and rely on the public to self-evacuate immediately to higher ground or further inland (Blake et al, 2018; MCDEM, 2016; MCDEM, 2018a).
- 2. Official warnings Official warnings are used to inform the public of a distant or regional source tsunami threat. National tsunami warnings are issued by NEMA with technical support from GNS Science/GeoNet's Monitoring Centre, who assess messages received from the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center (PTWC, based in Hawaii) and/or tsunamigenic data received from seismic sensors, tsunami gauges, DART (Deep Ocean Assessment and Reporting of Tsunamis) buoys around New Zealand (MCDEM, 2018). National warnings are disseminated to local CDEM Groups and media through the National Warning System to then be

disseminated to vulnerable communities (MCDEM, 2018a). Once a local CDEM Group has received a warning through the NWS, CDEM Groups can coordinate a local response for their vulnerable communities. Official warnings can be disseminated through multiple channels, including social media, websites, television, radio, emergency mobile alerts, and sirens (MCDEM, 2018a).

Recent advancements have been made to New Zealand's national warning system including 24/7 monitoring capability, establishment of the New Zealand DART Buoy Network and Emergency Mobile Alert (EMA) system. These advancements progress towards New Zealand's commitment to 'speed up' official tsunami warnings for at risk coastal communities (New Zealand Government, 2019).

To increase awareness of the types of tsunami warnings, effective evacuation planning is needed. Evacuation planning is "the process of identifying areas potentially at risk from tsunami, and the actions required to ensure the safety of people whilst evacuating from hazardous areas" (MCDEM, 2016). Therefore, it is a fundamental New Zealand has a nationally consistent approach to tsunami evacuation planning and to have a common understanding and align with processes for official tsunami warnings. New Zealand's primary components of tsunami evacuation planning include delineating evacuation zones, public education, evacuation boards and signs, exercises and drills and evacuation response plans including evacuation modelling. The National Emergency Management Agency (NEMA) has a comprehensive range of evacuation planning guidance, standards and national plans to guide Civil Defence Emergency Management Groups to implement tsunami evacuation planning at a local level (see Figure 2.3-1) including;

- Director's Guideline: Mass Evacuation Planning [DGL 07/08] (MCDEM, 2008)
- Directors Guideline: Tsunami Evacuation Zones [DGL 08/16] (MCDEM, 2016)
- Technical Standard: Tsunami Warning Sirens [TS 03/14] (MCDEM, 2014)
- Technical Standard: National Tsunami Signage [TS 01/08] (MCDEM, 2008a)
- Supporting Pan: Tsunami Advisory and Warning Plan [SP 01/17] (MCDEM, 2018a)
- Directors Guideline: Assessment and Planning for Tsunami Vertical Evacuation [DGL 21/18]
   (MCDEM, 2018)
- Technical Information: Tsunami Loads and Effects on Vertical Evacuation Structures. Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment (MBIE, 2020)

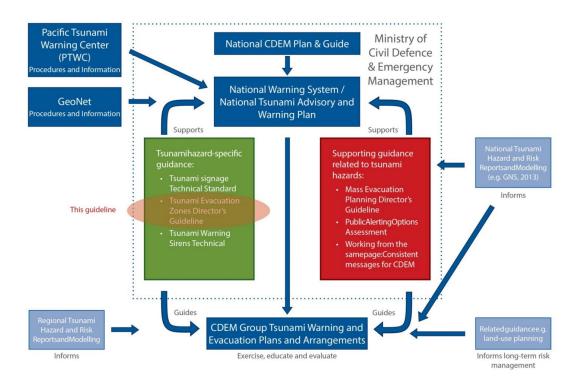


Figure 2.3-1: Process used to inform CDEM Group tsunami evacuation planning. Note, technical Information on tsunami loads and effects on vertical evacuation structures is not included on this diagram, however, should be considered for future evacuation planning. Retrieved from Ministry of Civil Defence & Emergency Management (MCDEM, 2016).

Tsunami evacuation zones are fundamentally about life safety (MCDEM, 2016). The New Zealand Tsunami Evacuation Zone Director's Guideline [DGL 08/16] provides a consistent national approach to map tsunami evacuation zones, create public information for evacuation response and align tsunami evacuation plans and processes with official tsunami warnings (MCDEM, 2016). Although informed by tsunami inundation modelling, evacuation zones are not tsunami hazard zones, tsunami risk zones, or inundation zones, they are areas that authorities recommend people evacuate from as precaution if they feel a long or strong earthquake or in an official tsunami warning (Jack & Schoenfeld, 2017; MCDEM, 2016).

The Directors Guideline [DGL 08/16] recommends a three zone approach (red, orange and yellow) (minimum of two) to encompass most, if not all local, regional and distant source scenarios:

**Red Zone** – represents the highest risk zone that is most likely to be affected by a tsunami. This includes beaches, estuaries, harbours and river mouths (marine and beach exclusion zone). People should evacuate from this zone if they feel a long or strong earthquake or receive and official warning.

Orange Zone – represents the zone to be used for official warnings of distant or regional source tsunami and should be linked to a particular threat level. This zone should encompass the potential inundation of the largest tsunami that can be expected in a 500 year return period. The intent of this zone is to provide a 'middle zone' to avoid over evacuation.

Yellow Zone – represents the areas to cover all maximum credible tsunami events including the highest impact events. It should be defined so that it encompasses the area expected to be inundated by a 2500 year return period tsunami.

Four development levels are recognised for establishing tsunami evacuation zone boundaries. To date, tsunami evacuation zone maps have been developed for all CDEM Groups, providing national coverage for New Zealand's coastline at risk to tsunami (Paulik et al. 2020).

Education is an important tool in tsunami risk management as it helps to improve public understanding towards tsunami risk (UNESCO, 2020). Tsunami education initiatives in an important aspect of New Zealand tsunami risk management programme (NEMA, n.d). National education initiatives are led by NEMA, which consists of national media campaigns and school programmes to support CDEM Groups to build on education campaigns at the community level. New Zealand's education campaigns and school programmes including 'Get Ready, Get Thru' 'and 'Long OR Strong, Get Gone' aims to improve public awareness and understanding of interpreting official and natural warnings and knowledge of appropriate protective actions to make before, during and after a response (Fraser, 2014; Fraser et al. 2013; Johnston et al. 2008; Løvholt et al., 2014; MCDEM, 2017a: see Figure 2.3-2). New Zealand's education campaigns focus on improving household, work place, schools and marae's preparedness to be ready for emergencies. Education resources are easily accessible and primarily advertised through television, radio, newspapers, school resources, and social media campaigns (NEMA, n.d).



Figure 2.3-2: National tsunami and earthquake public education campaigns. Top: Get Ready, Get Thru - What's the plan Stan. This campaign encourages households, work place, schools and marae, to develop a plan before an emergency happens. Bottom: education campaign on protective actions to take if New Zealand experiences a large natural warning Source: MCDEM (n.d.).

Tsunami signage is an integral part of New Zealand's tsunami risk management programme. Tsunami signage supports public education and response to tsunami through identifying evacuation zones, evacuation routes, and safe zones locations. (Fraser, 2014; MCDEM, 2008). Tsunami signage increases public awareness prior to an event whilst providing immediate guidance during an evacuation by informing people on where to evacuate to (Dengler, 2005; Lonergan et al., 2015). New Zealand's Technical Standard for Tsunami Signage [TS01/08] is designed to support public education and preparation and assist recognition and understanding of tsunami signage by tourists and visitors (Figure 2.3-3). Tsunami signage has been implemented in a number of communities across New Zealand, especially in high risk areas including but not limited to; Northland, Auckland, Hawkes Bay Wellington and Canterbury.



Figure 2.3-3: New Zealand tsunami evacuation signs (in Technical Standard [TS 01/08]) (MCDEM, 2008). Left: tsunami sign that directs evacuees to safe zones. Right: tsunami sign informs people on what tsunami evacuation zones they are in, and includes descriptions of natural warnings.

Tsunami boards, are an example of tsunami signage in which they assist community understanding of the risk and appropriate response to enable effective response to tsunami warning (MCDEM, 2008). Tsunami boards provide information on tsunami hazard characteristics, tsunami evacuation guidance, warnings and response information, local tsunami history and evacuation maps (Currie et al. 2014; MCDEM, 2008). Tsunami boards are recommended to be placed in high-use coastal areas, including beach access points, commercial holiday homes, shops, public buildings, and tourist facilities to reach the highest and at most risk populations (MCDEM, 2008; MCDEM, 2016). Local authorities have

implemented a number of tsunami boards to increase local tsunami risk awareness. Areas include but not limited to: Wellington (Figure 2.3-4), Christchurch, Tauranga, Timaru, and Wanganui.



Figure 2.3-4 Tsunami information board for Island Bay in Wellington.

**Blue-lines** represent safe places to evacuate following a long and/or strong earthquake shaking (WREMO, n.d). The Blue Lines concept was developed by a collaborative effort between residents in Island Bay (Wellington) and Wellington CDEM Group. This approach aimed to develop an education campaign to raise awareness of the maximum inundation level of a worst case scenario (WREMO, n.d). Blue lines have been recognised as an effective tsunami risk management initiative to increase awareness across the Wellington Region, however it is noted that further improvements could include information signage to explain the purpose of the blue lines (Currie et al., 2014). Since 2012, Blue Lines have been painted in Hutt Valley and the Wairarapa (WREMO, n.d, see Figure 2.3-5)



Figure 2.3-5: Example of blue lines in Wellington (Source: Fraser et al. 2014).

Evacuation drills and exercises combine evacuation planning and education, and enable the public to practice their evacuation routes and identify areas that would reduce their vulnerability in a tsunami event. Shakeout, held across the world and recently adopted in New Zealand's, is New Zealand's annual earthquake drill. In recent years NEMA has encouraged the incorporation of a tsunami hīkoi (walk), which encourage schools, work force and households to exercise response actions for a local source earthquake (natural warning) and practice their evacuation hīkoi (walk) (Vinnel et al. 2020; McBride et al. 2019). Currently, there is over 400,000 participants signed up to participate in New Zealand's 2020 ShakeOut drill (NEMA, n.d.c).

**Evacuation modelling** methods are an increasingly applied tsunami risk management initiative to assess residual risk of populations needing to reach safety (Fraser et al. 2014: MCDEM, 2018; Power et al. 2020; Wood et al. 2018:2013). Evacuation models are a tool to calculate the time to reach safety and assess evacuation route capacity and optimal evacuation routes through the incorporation of behavioural and physical elements such as evacuation delay time, movement rates, route availability and variability of population exposure and vulnerability (Fraser, 2014; Wood & Schmidtlein, 2013). Outputs of evacuation models provides emergency management with evacuation routing options, assessment of the performance of implementing existing evacuation response plans and evacuation drills, and the capability of overlaying data regarding evacuation safe points, potential congestion barriers, and optimal evacuation routes (González-Riancho et al., 2013; UNESCO, 2020; Wood & Schmidtlein, 2013). New Zealand evacuation modelling research is discussed in the following section (Section 2.4).

# 2.4 Evacuation modelling approaches and New Zealand evacuation modelling literature

The following section provides an overview of current global evacuation modelling approaches and recent New Zealand applications. Following the summary of these modelling approaches and key findings, a summary figure is presented outlining advantages and disadvantages on each evacuation modelling approach. Recent applications inform the reasoning for applying ArcCASPER extension tool for the development of vehicle network based evacuation model for Kaikōura (Chapter 4).

Evacuation modelling approaches including Agent-based modelling, Geospatial Least-cost distance modelling and Network-based modelling have been an increasingly applied evacuation planning tool in New Zealand. These approaches have primary focused on evacuation time simulations, simulations of shortest paths to reach safety, and influence of population demographics and socio-economic factors to predict hypothetical evacuation scenarios (Fraser, 2014).

A recently applied evacuation modelling method in New Zealand is Agent-based modelling (Power et al. 2019). This is an approach to the simulation of the movement of 'agents' (people) during an evacuation event (Mas et al. 2015, 2012; Power et al. 2019; Shahabi & Wilson, 2014; Wang et al. 2016). This modelling technique estimates evacuation time to represent realistic characteristics of the population including walking speed and evacuation delay time, and can incorporate the effects of interactions between agents such as the effects of congestions and evacuation response time. Power et al. (2019) developed an agent-based modelling approach to simulate pedestrian evacuation of three at risk coastal communities in New Zealand: Petone (Wellington) (see Figure 2.4-1), Napier, and Sumner (Christchurch). The aim of this research project was to model evacuation time and identify potential congestion pinch points, and receive community feedback from the public about how to improve the models and improve evacuation speed and safety. Local knowledge and discussions with local CDEM practitioners provided recommendations to make tsunami evacuations quicker and safer (e.g. implementation evacuation bridges, vertical evacuation structures and community awareness initiatives).

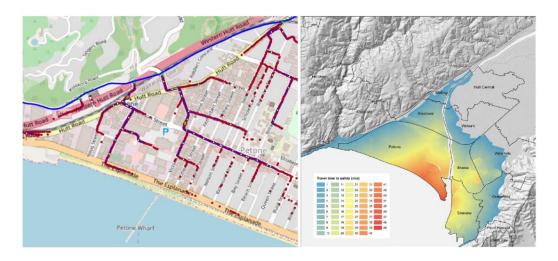


Figure 2.4-1: Tsunami evacuation modelling techniques. Left: Agent-based tsunami evacuation model for Petone, Lower Hutt, New Zealand. Red dots represent individual evacuees and purple indicates likely congestion. Right: Least-cost distance model for Petone, Lower Hutt, New Zealand. Evacuation time estimates a presented based on topographic characteristics.

Least cost distance (LCD) modelling is an well-established modelling method for tsunami evacuation planning, particular in international research (Fraser et al. 2014a; González-Riancho et al. 2013; Wood & Schmidtlein, 2013, 2012; Graehl & Dengler, 2008). This method applies travel speeds to a cost distance surface to generate a time surface representing the time to travel from origin source to safe zone destinations (Wood et al. 2013). A couple of studies have been conducted applying least cost distance modelling approach in New Zealand. This includes the work of Fraser et al. 2014b who developed a method to incorporate time-variable exposure, distributed travel speeds and uncertain evacuation departure time into an existing LCD framework, and applied it to two coastal communities of Napier and Hawkes Bay. Le (2016) applied a similar methodological framework but for three 'extreme' scenarios for the coastal suburb of Sumner in Christchurch. The results of this work presented spatio-temporal distribution of variable population groups to reflect diurnal and seasonal population variation. More recently, Lukovic et al. (2017) developed evacuation time estimates for local source tsunami for Wellington suburbs, New Zealand, which indicated that evacuation travel times for several suburbs exceed the arrival time of the first tsunami wave for a worst-case scenario. Figure 2.4-1 provides an example of the results of the LCD modelling approach.

Network based modelling is a common approach used in traffic modelling literature (Shahabi, 2012; Shahabi & Wilson, 2018; You, 2013). Although traffic modelling literature is well established in many other research disciplines, little research have incorporated traffic parameters into evacuation modelling for tsunami research. Shahabi (2012) addressed this research gap by developing a Network Analyst extension tool 'ArcCASPER' (Capacity-Aware Shortest Path Evacuation Routing) following the 2011 Tohoku earthquake and tsunami. The extension tool includes an evacuation routing algorithm to determine traversal speeds for each road segment based incorporating network capacity, evacuee

density and congestion potential. Shahabi (2012) applied the tool for San Francisco, U.S, to determine evacuation time through minimising the effects of congestion. ArcCASPER has been an increasingly applied tool to determine evacuation time estimates for communities at risk to tsunami in New Zealand. Knook et al. 2015, was the first study to apply this tool in New Zealand. This work developed a network-based tsunami evacuation model for Tauranga City, Bay of Plenty. Findings of this work estimated pedestrian evacuation times of up to 180 minutes for the entire city to evacuate to safety. Evacuation was optimised through the inclusion of vertical evacuation structures which reduced evacuation time estimate to 70 minutes. Tilley (2018), applied the ArcCASPER network analyst tool for coastal suburbs of Southshore, South New Brighton and North New Brighton in Christchurch. The tool was used to determine vehicle evacuation times per household, evacuation times to travel along certain road segments, and vehicle density count along the study area's road network. A key finding of this research estimated a total evacuation time for all households to reach safety, could take up to 100 minutes. Evans (2020) applied the ArcCASPER tool to assess evacuation times for Riversdale Beach in the Wairarapa, Wellington Region. Results of this research, estimated a total evacuation time of 110 minutes for a maximum occupancy night-time scenario (see Figure 2.4-2). A recent study by Barnhill (2020), applied the ArcCASPER tool, to assess evacuation time estimates for coastal communities in Banks Peninsula. The results of the evacuation modelling tool estimated evacuation times of up to 8 minutes for certain bays in Banks Peninsula.

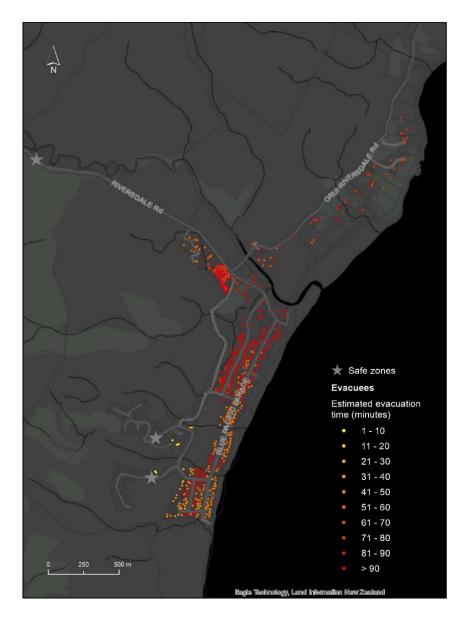


Figure 2.4-2: Arc CASPER Network Evacuation model for Riversdale Beach in the Wairarapa (Source: Evans, 2020)

Evacuation Method	Advantages	Disadvantages	References
ArcCASPER	Open-source GIS extension tool - available for anyone to download and use, however, it is only compatible with ArcGIS     Three different traffic model algorithms available     Easy to replicate models. Can be used to model various scenarios     Output allows for the visualisation of route statistics and route congestion times based on a world traffic estimation algorithm     Can model various modes of evacuation (Vehicle, pedestrian)	Only compatible with the Network Analyst tool with in ArcGIS     Requires a network dataset with no accuracy, alignment, or topological errors to function properly     Can have shortcomings during the modelling process. Shortcomings include optimising every road within the network, not taking into account complex turn restrictions, node breaks in road network     Only optimises road network	<ul> <li>Alabdouli, 2015</li> <li>Harris, 2015</li> <li>Shahabi, 2012: 2014</li> <li>You, 2013</li> </ul>
Agent-Based Modelling	<ul> <li>Ability to control agent behaviour to simulate 'real life' situations for different temporal scales</li> <li>Models various modes of evacuation (vehicle and pedestrian)</li> <li>Can model individual evacuee behaviour</li> </ul>	Significant amount of data is needed to model evacuee behaviour Models can be difficult to disseminate Difficult to validate and reproduce the model Software is expensive and not easily accessible	<ul> <li>Mas et al. 2015; 2012</li> <li>Yeh, 2014</li> <li>Affan et al. 2012</li> <li>Anh, et al. 2012</li> </ul>
Least-Cost Distance Modelling	Multiple modes of transportation can be mapped     Slope and land cover data can be used to calculate travel costs     Compatible with ArcGIS	Limited to shortest path approach Travel cost is calculated for each raster cell which requires high-resolution data to ensure accuracy of results – this is not always easily accessible Difficult to validate model Only considers pedestrian evacuation	Le, 2016 González Riancho et al. 2013 Wood & Schmidtlein, 2013

Figure 2.4-3 Advantages and disadvantages of three evacuation modelling methods. Source: Tilley, 2018.

To date, New Zealand tsunami risk management initiatives including evacuation planning has been informed from global practice and international research findings (Jack & Schoenfeld, 2017). A significant focus of this has incorporated response and evacuation behaviour of recent global tsunami events including the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami. However, tsunami events continue to affect vulnerable coastal communities globally and in New Zealand. Key findings on evacuation behaviour of recent tsunami events is vital to inform best practice for tsunami evacuation planning in New Zealand. Section 2.5 provides an overview of global and New Zealand tsunami evacuation behaviour survey research and findings.

#### 2.5 Global and New Zealand tsunami evacuation behaviour research

Natural hazards are of unpredictable nature and often precludes the collection of pre-disaster data and information on prior experiences, risk and impact assessments, plans and evacuation intentions. Over recent decades, research on evacuation from natural disasters has been increasingly published across several disparate disciplines such as sociology, psychology, engineering, natural hazards, risk assessments and management, and traffic management (Thompson et al. 2017). Evacuation research have explored factors and predictors that help explain evacuation behaviour of natural hazards such as hurricanes, floods, wildfires, volcanic eruptions, and tsunami (Dash & Gladwin, 2007; Hasan et al., 2011; Jumadi et al., 2018; Lindell et al., 2011; Maghelal et al., 2017; Potter et al., 2018; Thompson et al., 2017; Toledo et al., 2018). Several common factors that influenced evacuation behaviour include but not limited to demographics such as gender, age and living situation, knowledge of hazards and warnings, evacuation intentions, preparedness actions, and prior disaster and evacuation experiences.

Although a substantial body of research has analysed evacuation behaviour for hurricanes, floods, and wildfires, tsunami evacuation literature remains limited due to the infrequent nature of considerable size tsunami events that has required evacuation (Fraser et al. 2016). To date, global research on tsunami warnings and evacuation behaviours have demonstrated the complexity of understanding the biological, psychological, social, and environmental reasoning's leading to response behaviour (Fraser et al. 2016; Lindell et al . 2015; Bird et al. 2011; Gregg et al. 2006). Studies have investigated various aspects of human behaviour such as tsunami preparedness, risk awareness, evacuation intentions, and evacuation behaviour and dynamics of past earthquake and tsunami events (Makinoshima et al. 2020; Dhellemmes et al. 2016; Currie et al. 2013; Couling, 2014; Johnston et al. 2003).

An important review paper by Mikinoshima et al. (2020) concludes after reviewing numerous publications and reports on survey research understanding evacuation behaviour of past tsunami events, no comprehensive overview of a complete tsunami evacuation process has been reported in global evacuation survey literature. Understanding this gap, Makinoshima et al. (2020) used the findings of a recent study to develop a framework (see Figure 2.5-1) to guide future survey research to understand a complete tsunami evacuation process. This process consists of various components such as notifications (warnings) and individual movements across three evacuation process phases: response phase, evacuation movement phase, additional phase. This section provides an overview of a complete tsunami evacuation process through lessons learnt from past global and national events. The results presented in the next chapter (Chapter 3) contributes to this global tsunami research gap by contributing an empirical dataset of a complete evacuation response of a local source event in New Zealand (as outlined in Section 1.2).

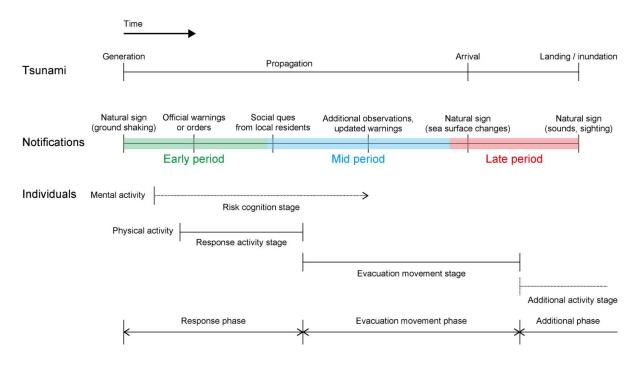


Figure 2.5-1: tsunami evacuation planning process developed by Makinoshima et al. 2020.

# **Tsunami notifications (Warnings)**

When a tsunami is generated due to a natural phenomenon, evacuation is necessary to save lives. In many cases, there is a lead time between the generation of the tsunami and the time at which the first tsunami waves reaches land. During this lead time, various types of notifications e.g. tsunami threat and warning messages are issued for at risk populations. When a notification is issued quickly this enables people to prepare and take appropriate protective actions accordingly.

During the early notification period, the first warning for a local earthquake-induced tsunami is strong ground motions (natural cues). A number of survey studies found a strong correlation of strong ground shaking prompting evacuations or indication of a possible tsunami threat (Blake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office in Japan. 2012; Harnantyari et al. 2020; Lindell et al. 2015; Murakami et al. 2012; Ushiyama & Imamura, 2003). Contradictory to this, survey research conducted by Gregg et al. 2006 and Gaillard et al. 2008 found reports that strong ground shaking did not influence evacuation intentions during the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami. Distant source tsunami notifications are reliant on official warnings due the unfelt ground shaking or other natural cues. Official warnings are primary issued through media such as radios, TV's, social media, emergency mobile alerts and sirens (Perry, 2007). Advanced technology has improved global tsunami early warning systems by assessing tsunami source characteristics efficiently and more accurately, this information is essential for officials and emergency response personnel. Survey research has indicated a reliance of evacuation warnings from officials as a contributing factor to evacuate (Bake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office in Japan, 2012; Goto et al. 2013; Ikeda et al. 2017; Lindell et al. 2015; Murakami et al. 2012; Togawa et al. 2018; Yoshi et al. 2008). However, underestimation of tsunami impact can lead to misunderstanding of tsunami risk and create distrust on officials during future events (Suppasri et al. 2016).

After experiencing natural warnings or receiving an official warning during the early period, people start to take protective actions. Response behaviours can function as social cues and are considered informal warnings (Minkinoshima et al. 2020). Survey research have reported social cues such as family members or neighbours initiating evacuation (Blake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office in Japan, 2012; Goto et al. 2012; Hiroi et al. 2005; Kato et al. 2009; Lindell et al. 2015; Mikinoshima et al. 2020; Okumura et al. 2010), and seeing other people evacuate can trigger response actions (Gaillard et al. 2008; Haranantyari et al. 2020; Lindell et al. 2015; Murakami et al. 2012; Goto et al. 2013). An important social cue that saved lives during the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami, was tsunami risk education in schools, also known as "Kamaishi Miracle', which influenced the surrounding adults who has less awareness of tsunami to evacuate to safety (Katada & Kanai, 2016). In addition to the social cues, early warning systems continually updates earthquake and tsunami source information, therefore, authorities can update or disseminate warnings or evacuations orders (Makinoshima et al. 2020).

During the late period, tsunamis can start to impact coastal areas (Makinoshima et al. 2020. This can been observed from natural warnings such as sea level changes and the sea receding. Sighting of receding sea has been a commonly reported natural cue in past survey research, particularly during the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and the 2009 American Samoa tsunami (Bird et al. 2011; Dudley et al. 2011; Gaillard et al. 2008). Hearing unusual sounds from the sea or sighting of the tsunami is

considered the last warning before tsunamis effect coastal communities (Makinoshima et al. 2020). This was reported during the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami, where 69% of survey respondents reported they saw unusual changes in the ocean and 5% heard unusual sounds (Gregg t al. 2006). Similar experience were reported during the 2009 American Samoa tsunami where survey respondents stated that the tsunami sounded like "an aeroplane about to take off" and "war machine guns" (Dudley et al. 2011).

#### Individual activities

Risk cognition stage is considered when notifications are perceived by local residents who have knowledge of natural hazards and past disaster experiences, environmental backgrounds, and motivate diverse risk cognition and response activities. Although all residents receive the same notification, the degree of perceived risk and response behaviours vary from persons due to diverse backgrounds (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Key findings of previous research suggest that the existence of knowledge of earthquake-generated tsunami is essential for people to interpret natural warnings. A study conducted by Mcadoo et al. 2006 discussed the importance of indigenous knowledge towards appropriate response actions and minimising tsunami loss.

An effective evacuation process requires minimal response activity. This increases the time to conduct evacuation movements to safety before the first tsunami wave arrives on land (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Preparations and response activities prior to evacuation have been observed during past tsunami events. Common response activities reported in survey literature revealed that seeking or collecting information from officials or family members and neighbours, and checking if family and neighbours are safe influenced the shift from response to evacuation movements (Blake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office in Japan, 2012; Fraser et al. 2016; Lindell et al. 2015; Sun et al. 2017; Ushiyama & Imamura, 2003). Such behaviour, in particular checking on family members and neighbours, can influence where people are located e.g. schools and retirements homes located on higher ground. Once people decide to evacuate they might take preparation actions (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Preparation actions taken in past tsunami events include; packed an emergency kit, collect valuable items, locked the house and checked the house for damage (Goto et al. 2012; Harnantyari et al. 2020; Lindell et al. 2015). If people perceive they are not at risk to tsunami, they do not shift to the evacuation movement stage and shift focus to the impacts caused by the earthquake (Goto et al. 2012). Some people don't evacuate until they have received cues in the late notification period (Makinoshima et al. 2020).

The evacuation movement phase starts with the end of the response activities. At the beginning of the evacuation movement phase people decide on the on their evacuation safe zone destination, evacuation route and mode of transport (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Once this is decided people begin their evacuation movements. Evacuation survey research has reported that evacuees generally head to high ground or to strong structures nearby. Common reports of popular safe zone locations during recent tsunami events include schools, churches, public halls, family member homes or outside areas on higher ground (Cabinet Office, 2010; Cabinet Office in Japan, 2012; Harnantyari et al. 2020; Lindell et al. 2015; Yoshii et al. 2008). Very few surveys have analysed evacuation route decision-making however a number of studies have compiled congestion barriers that were observed during the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami. Makinoshima et al. 2016 there were major traffic congestion barriers on main roads that usually carry large volumes of traffic. Similar observation were reported during the event in Banda Aceh in 2011 (Goto et al. 2013). An increasingly explored evacuation movement aspect has been evacuation travel mode. Pedestrian evacuation is strongly encouraged to avoid evacuation delay e as a result of potential congestion, however, a preference towards vehicular evacuation has been observed during past tsunami events (Blake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office, 2010; Cabinet Office in Japan; Lindell et al. 2015; Makinoshima et al. 2016; Murakami et al. 2012; Sun et al. 2017; Yoshi et al. 2008). Reasons have been presented for vehicular evacuation which include a place of warmth, portable assets and a place of shelter, unaware of congestion potential, long distance to reach a safe zone, evacuate with family, and receive information via car radio (Cabinet Office in Japan; Lindell et al. 2015; Togawa et al. 2018). In contrast to this, pedestrian evacuation was dominant during the 2018 Sulawesi tsunami, this was argues as a result of low car ownership (Harnantyari et al. 2020).

Once people have completed their evacuation movements, people often take additional activities or evacuation movements (Mikinoshima et al. 2020). Once people reach their safe zone locations people congress and communicate with other evacuees. As a result evacuees realise they are less prepared and return home to retrieve personal belongings, check on family members or neighbours and collect necessities for long-term shelter. Returning to at risk areas causes an additional evacuation movement phase which poses greater tsunami risk to evacuees (Cabinet Office in Japan, 2012; Institute of Socio-Information and the University of Tokyo Communication Studies, 1994). For effective evacuations, it is essential to conduct an efficient evacuation and to remain at safe zone destinations until there is no official tsunami warning messages and the clearance has been given by officials.

# 2.6 Research gaps

An evacuation response is a complex and dynamic process, largely influenced by personal characteristics, recognition and interpretations of warnings, perception of risk and decision-making (Lindell & Perry, 1992). Understanding real-event evacuation behaviour and associated dynamics of past tsunami events, offers important knowledge to contribute to a better understanding on response actions warnings and the associated behaviours. Such knowledge could improve on current tsunami risk management and preparedness initiatives to improve public's awareness on tsunami risk and protective actions to take in future events. As stated in Section 2.5, an important review paper by Makinoshima et al. (2020), concluded that whilst evacuation behaviour research of past tsunami events have been investigated for various aspects such as tsunami preparedness, risk awareness, or evacuation intentions, no survey research has captured a comprehensive overview of a complete evacuation process on past tsunami events.

In addition to this research gap, recent global tsunami events have highlighted the importance of integrating social science approaches and evacuation modelling methods, by incorporating empirical data to inform future tsunami evacuation planning (Kubisch et al. 2020; UNESCO, 2020). Social science literature suggests survey questionnaires focusing on evacuation intentions and/or human behaviour observed during past tsunami events have been key input parameters for improving evacuation model techniques (Dash & Galdwin, 2007; Kubische al. 2019; Lindell & Prater, 2007; Power et al. 2019). Such parameters have been incorporated to represent variability in evacuation response and decision-making, for example, evacuation delay time and congestion barriers, to improve on and present realistic modelling results (Wood et al. 2018). However, limited understanding of a complete evacuation process (as outline above) has led to the inclusion of modelling inputs informed from observed evacuation behaviour of other natural hazards, specifically hurricanes in the United States (Baker, 1991; Lindell & Prater, 2007). Although recent advancements have been made towards including evacuation behaviour of past tsunami events into current evacuation modelling approaches such as agent-based modelling (Kubisch et al. 2020), further research is required to incorporate real-event evacuation behaviours more holistically for accurate outputs.

This research addresses this global tsunami science research gap by contributing an empirical dataset that has analysed a complete evacuation response of residents located in the Kaikōura township following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Improving understanding on immediate reactions and evacuation behaviours of a large local-source tsunami could inform and/or improve on current tsunami risk management and awards initiatives for coastal areas at risk to local-source tsunami in New Zealand or globally.

# Chapter 3: Tsunami evacuation behaviour and movements following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami

# 3.1 Introduction

The purpose of Chapter 3 is to address research objective one: understand evacuation behaviour and dynamics of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and subsequent tsunami. First, a summarised literature review on tsunami evacuation behaviour research is presented, identifying a research knowledge gap and highlighting the importance of the present research. Second, an overview of the development of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey is presented followed by a methodology for the design, distribution, collection and analysis of the aforementioned survey. Third, the survey results are classified by three key areas aspects: (1) warning and evacuation decision-making, (2) evacuation response and movements, and (3) risk awareness and its influence on evacuation response. Fourth, a discussion is presented, drawing on key themes of survey results and comparatives from international and New Zealand evacuation behaviour literature. Recommendations are provided to inform tsunami evacuation planning and support disaster resilience in New Zealand and globally.

As noted in the introductory chapter, tsunamis are known to be one of the most powerful and destructive natural hazards to impact on exposed communities (Williams, 2020). Many of New Zealand's coastal communities including Kaikoura, are vulnerable to local source tsunamis that could potentially inundate low-lying areas within a matter of minutes (MCDEM, 2016; Power 2013; Barryman et al. 2005). During a tsunami event, evacuation is considered the primary risk reduction strategy for preventing casualties, thus it is imperative to increase at risk communities awareness and preparedness towards taking protective actions during future tsunami events (MCDEM, 2016). As stated in Chapter 2, In New Zealand, the Civil Defence and Emergency Management sector educate the public who live, work, or play near the coast on the importance of using natural warnings for selfevacuation in the case of a considerable local-source event; if an earthquake is long (longer than one minute), or strong (difficult to stand up) evacuate immediately to higher ground or move further inland (MCDEM, 2018). It is important to understand the practical challenges and behaviours that could occur during an evacuation response such as warning dissemination and communication, preparedness and response capacity including evacuation movements, and disaster risk knowledge (Fraser et al. 2016). Globally, research on tsunami warnings and evacuation behaviours have demonstrated the complexity of understanding the biological, psychological, social and environmental reasoning's leading to response behaviour (Fraser et al. 2016; Lindell et al. 2015; Bird et al. 2011;

Gregg et al. 2006). To date, tsunami evacuation literature has primarily focused on a specific phase of the evacuation response process for example; tsunami preparedness, risk awareness or evacuation intentions however, an important recent review paper by Makinoshima et al. (2020) concludes no research has captured a comprehensive overview of a complete evacuation process on previous tsunami events. This research addresses this global tsunami science research gap by contributing an empirical dataset that has analysed a complete evacuation response of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and subsequent tsunami. Understanding real-event evacuation behaviour and movements of a considerable local-source earthquake response can provide other at risk communities with valuable information to consider for future disaster risk management and support evacuation response planning.

# 3.2 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami evacuation survey methodology

This section provides an overview of the conceptual and methodological development of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami response survey.

In 2018, tsunami disaster risk and resilience researchers from University of Canterbury, GNS Science, National Institute for Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA), Massey University, and natural hazard risk management and emergency management practitioners actively involved in the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake response (Environment Canterbury, Canterbury CDEM, Christchurch City Council (CCC) CDEM, and Kaikōura District Council CDEM) began a collaborative study which aimed to understand the evacuation response of 14 November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake across the Canterbury region and in other case-study locations across New Zealand (Barnhill, 2020; Blake et al. 2018). This master's thesis is part of this wider collaborative project, contributing by focusing on understanding the spontaneous evacuation response of residents and accommodation providers who were living in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (a community proximal to the tsunami source). Barnhill (2020) conducted research in parallel to this thesis by analysing evacuation behaviour of coastal suburbs in Eastern Christchurch and Banks Peninsula (communities which were medial to distal to the tsunami source).

# 3.2.1 Evacuation survey development

Questionnaire surveys are a well-established tool used across sectors including but not limited to scientists, government agencies, and non-governmental organisations for collecting information on

participant characteristics, behaviours, and reasons for actions (Bird, 2009: Dillman et al. 2014). The application of surveys have been used to address gaps in research or solve a problem or answer a question, especially for post-disaster research where emergency management and researchers seek to gain an understanding of people's behaviour and reactions during an event, to improve DRR and resilience initiatives for at risk communities (Bird et al. 2011; Harnantyari et al. 2019; Mas et al. 2015). A survey was decided to be used for this research as a tool to collect as many resident responses on actions and evacuation behaviour following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, and align with national tsunami survey research to ensure a consistent approach.

For this study, a survey instrument was designed which directly addresses the global tsunami research gap outlined in Section 3.1 and Chapter 2, by developing a questionnaire survey to record the entire evacuation process of Kaikōura residents in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 earthquake event. The survey asked questions on warning and response decision-making, evacuation behaviour and movements, prior risk awareness influence on evacuation response, and preparations made following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The survey was developed from a previous survey instrument from Blake et al. 2018, who analysed response actions and behaviours of residents in Petone and Eastbourne following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, who in turn had developed their survey from the work of Johnston et al. 2003, who conducted New Zealand's first national tsunami risk awareness survey and subsequent survey research that followed (Blake et al. 2018; Couling, 2014; Dhellemmes et al. 2016; Fraser et al., 2016; Fraser et al. 2013; Johnston et al. 2003). Key additional methodological develop steps for this survey included adding questions to better record evacuation dynamics (especially designed to inform geospatial evacuation modelling, see below) and to explore the role of pre-event tsunami hazard and risk preparedness activities – which had been a major focus of disaster risk management agencies (ECan and KDC CDEM) in Kaikōura. This was done in close partnership with natural hazard risk management and emergency management practitioners from ECan and KDC CDEM.

The design of this survey aimed to record the entire evacuation process of Kaikōura residents in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 earthquake event.

The questionnaire survey consisted of 42 questions (see Appendix A), approximately 30 of these were adapted and modified from Blake et al. (2018), suitable to Kaikōura's context. Question style ranged from multi-single choice check box, open-ended, and geospatial maps, with most questions having an additional section to provide comments. Questions used in this research survey additional to Blake et al. 2018 survey includes:

- In addition to the geospatial map supplied, there was an option of providing a detailed description of their evacuation route (Q11 – see Appendix A)
- Did you evacuate individually, or with others? If with others, please describe (Q21 see Appendix A)
- Did you encounter any traffic congestion or were you aware of congestions problems? If yes,
   which roads or areas were congested? Please indicate these roads on the map (Q23 and Q24 see Appendix A)
- Following the evacuation response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, would you consider a
  different evacuation route map supplied to draw alternative evacuation route (Q33 see
  Appendix A)
- Prior and following to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, how would you describe your knowledge
  of tsunami and the need to evacuate? (Q37 and Q41 see Appendix A)
- How did your prior awareness of tsunamis influence your behaviour BEFORE and IMMEDIATELY after the 14<sup>th</sup> November earthquake (Q39 and Q40 – see Appendix A)
- Which of the following preparations have you made in the case of a significant earthquake and tsunami evacuation? (Q42 see Appendix A)

Once the survey questions were developed, a hard-copy questionnaire survey was the primary means of collecting responses (Appendix A), however an online version of the questionnaire survey was developed using Qualtrics, a data analyses and management platform designed for survey research (Qualtrics 2019, University of Canterbury). In addition to the questionnaire survey, an information sheet and consent form were provided with both the hard-copy and online version of the survey. The consent form had to be completed before the participants could proceed to the survey. It was estimated that the questionnaire survey would take 15-20 minutes to complete based on the length of the survey and question types. A prepaid envelope addressed to the former Geological Sciences Department at the University of Canterbury was attached to the survey for collection.

Ethical considerations were a key part of methodological design. This research was conducted following the approval and guidelines of a Low Risk ethics application by University of Canterbury Human Ethics Committee (HEC 2018/100/LR) (See Appendix A for the complete Human Ethics application form). A central consideration was that this survey could trigger distressing emotions from the 2016 earthquake and tsunami disaster and acknowledged that the Kaikōura community was still in the recovery phase of the disaster response at the time when this survey was conducted. Therefore, it was made clear that participation was voluntary and there was no obligation to engage in the research process, and to foreground information provided in the survey for those wishing to access

support from the Mental Health Education and Resources Centre. Considerations were also given around the sensitivities of conducting the survey 28 months after the event, included triggering of distressing emotions and secondary stressors such as financial hardship, dealing with insurers or other impacts (see Appendix A on ethical risks and actions to mitigate and manage these).

## 3.2.2 Evacuation survey distribution, collection and analysis

The primary survey distribution method was a hard-copy letter box drop. This method was used to align with other national survey research and to ensure consistency. The distribution of hard-copy surveys was conducted in March 2019, approximately 28 months after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. A three-member UC-based research team distributed 1055 hard copies of the survey to every residential and accommodation provider letterbox within the Kaikōura township and South Bay (Figure 3.2-1). This area was chosen due to the exposure to tsunami, with the majority of residential properties located in a tsunami evacuation zone. A link to the online version of the questionnaire survey was posted to an online community Facebook group 'Kaikōura Notice Board 'website on the 12th February 2019 (Facebook, 2019) to reach residents outside of the study are zone who were willing to participate in this research or those who did not have a letter box. An article on the evacuation survey research, linking the online survey tool was advertised in the Kaikōura Star (local newspaper), the week following the field survey distribution (Kaikōura Star, 2019). One hundred hard-copy surveys were also made available at the Kaikōura District Council Library for any other residents to complete.

When hard copies of the survey were received, results were manually transcribed in a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet. Survey results received through the online survey tool were extracted from Qualtrics (Qualtrics, 2019) and combined in to the same Excel workbook. The Microsoft Excel Spreadsheet fields were added to incorporate both hardcopy and online survey responses. Once all surveys were received by the deadline (April 1<sup>st</sup> 2019) and transcribed or uploaded in the Microsoft Excel spreadsheet, data and correlation analysis was performed in Microsoft Excel.



Figure 3.2-1: Kaikōura study area and outline (red) of evacuation survey letterbox drop.

# 3.3 Survey results

The following section presents the results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami evacuation survey. Results are represented by descriptive statistics and geospatial information on the behaviours and associated evacuation dynamics of Kaikōura residents during and immediately following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. To understand the entire response process, results are separated into three key focus areas;

- 1. Warning and evacuation decision-making
- 2. Evacuation movements and associated dynamics

#### 3. Risk awareness influence on evacuation response

Appendix A 1.3 presents tabulated results of all 42 questions asked in the survey.

# 3.3.1 Survey response rate

One thousand and fifty-five surveys were distributed in letterboxes around the Kaikōura Township, and 100 copies were left at the Kaikōura District Council Library. A total of 131 responses were received, resulting in a 12.4% survey response rate (Table 3.3-1). This response rate is similar with previous tsunami survey research in New Zealand (Barnhill, 2020; Blake et al. 2018; Dhellemmes, et al. 2016; Johnston et al. 2003). The majority of questionnaire surveys were returned by mail (n=119) and 12 were completed using the online Qualtrics survey tool. Figure 3.3-1 shows the extent of survey response locations with returns received from inland of Kaikōura Township to Mangamaunu and Oaro.

Table 3.3-1: Statistics on survey distribution, returns and survey response rate.

Number of surveys distributed	Number of surveys returned	Survey response rate	
1055 hard-copies	131 including hard-copies	12.4% return rate	
	(119) and electronic version		
	(n=12)		

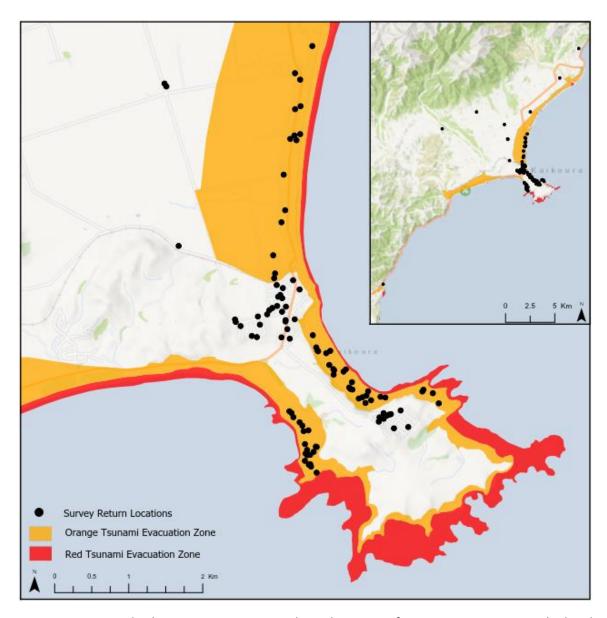


Figure 3.3-1: Map displaying approximate residence locations of survey participants overlaid with official CDEM tsunami evacuation zones. See Chapter 1 for explanation on Canterbury's tsunami evacuation zones

# 3.3.2 Kaikōura survey return demographics

The majority of survey respondents were female (62%), of those, 61% are aged 15-64 years (Table 3.3-

- 2). Although a smaller proportion of respondents were male (35%), the majority (70%) are aged 65 years and older. Of the total respondents, 75% reported they are family without children (Table 3.3-
- 2). When the survey respondent's demographic information is compared to the New Zealand Statistics demographic information of Kaikōura's (township) population in Table 3.3.-2, we see a considerable survey bias of survey returns towards females and older people compared to the inhabitants in Kaikōura. Interestingly survey returns show a strong bias towards family without children (75%) relative to the inhabitant proportion of 24.7%.

Table 3.3-2: Demographic composition of the Kaikōura Township and survey respondents

Demographic information on Kaikōura Township and survey respondents					
	respond	Census 2018	Survey respondents		
Population					
Population	Total count (n)	2,223	131 (n)		
Count (n)	Median age (n)	47.7			
	Males (n)	49.8%	35 %		
	Females (n)	50.2%	62 %		
Age and sex (%)					
Under 15 years	Male	14.9%	-		
	Female	13.7%	-		
15-64 years	Male	59.6%	30%		
	Female	59.9%	61%		
65 years and	Male	25.5%	70%		
over	Female	26.3%	39%		
Housing and living situation					
Occupied dwelling	-	915	-		
Unoccupied	-	459	-		
dwelling					
Family without		24.7%	75%		
children					
Family with Children		72.2%	20%		

# 3.3.3 2016 Kaikōura earthquake warning and evacuation decision-making

During an evacuation response, natural cues are encouraged as the first point of warning (MCDEM, 2018). The first section of the questionnaire survey seeks to understand how natural warnings influence evacuation response of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. This sub-section provides the survey results to better understand:

- Perceived shaking intensity and duration of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake,
- 2016 Kaikōura earthquake immediate response,
- pre-evacuation actions,
- evacuation response, and
- reasons for evacuating.

#### 3.3.3.1 Perceived shaking intensity and duration of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake

The 2016 Mw 7.8 earthquake woke the majority of the survey respondents (82%, n=103). 16% (n=20) stated they were already awake at the time of the earthquake, and only 2% (n=3) reported to had

slept through the earthquake. Respondents were asked to provide their perception on the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake shaking intensity and duration. Of the total 131 participants who provided a response on perceived shaking intensity, 56% (n=73) described the earthquake felt 'Violent', 37% (n=49) perceived the intensity to be 'strong or powerful', and 5% (n=6) reported the earthquake felt 'moderate'. Figure 3.3-2 provides a breakdown of the total response to perceived shaking intensity question. The respondent that selected 'not felt' was in Christchurch at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

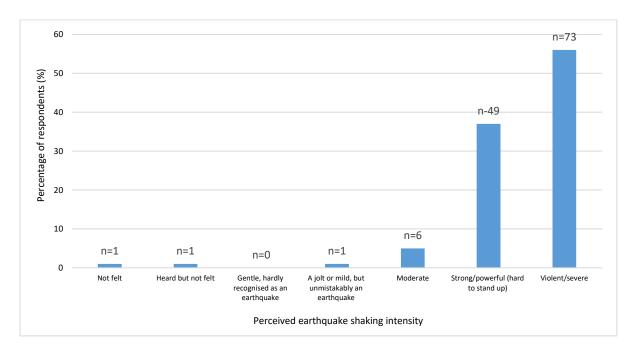


Figure 3.3-2: Bar graph representing respondent's perceived shaking intensity of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Figure 3.3-3 provides a comparative analysis of respondent's perceived shaking intensity against the dissolved shake map of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake developed by USGS (USGS, 2016). According to the dissolved shake map, the Kaikōura Township experienced Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale (MMI) VII 'very strong' shaking intensity. Respondents who provided their location and perceived shaking intensity are shown on Figure 3.3-3.

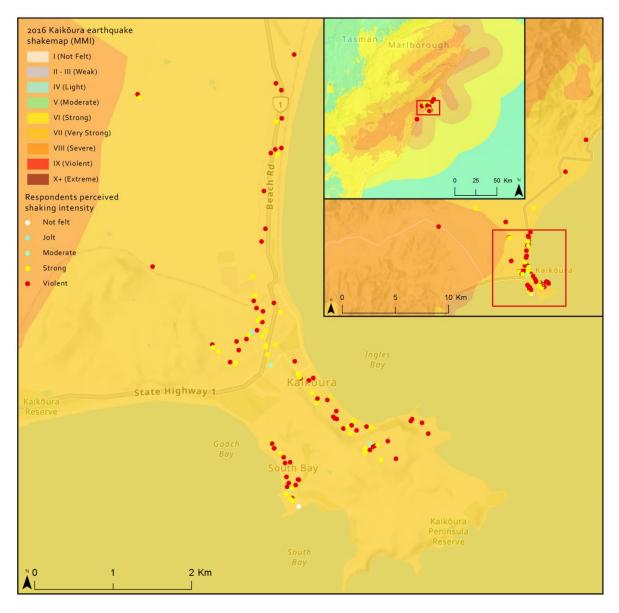


Figure 3.3-3: Map displaying USGS dissolved Shakemap of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake overlaid with respondent's perceived shaking intensity. Respondents perceived shaking intensity is colour coded in respect to the USGS Shakemap intensity colours.

In addition to earthquake shaking intensity, respondents were asked to provide their best estimate on earthquake shaking duration. The survey results revealed that 27% (n=31) estimated shaking duration of approximately 120 seconds, 22% (n=25) of respondents reported shaking duration of 60-120 seconds, 16% (n=19) stated that they 'don't know' or could not remember, 12% (n=14) estimated shaking duration greater than 120 seconds, 10% selected shaking duration felt less than 60 seconds and 1% (n=1) selected not felt (Appendix B). The box and whisker graph (Figure 3.3-4) shows the range of estimated shaking duration. The earthquake shaking duration range was between 5 seconds to 300 seconds, with a mean of 102 seconds and median equalling 100 seconds. Respondents who stated earthquake shaking duration of 300 seconds and 240 seconds were considered outliers.

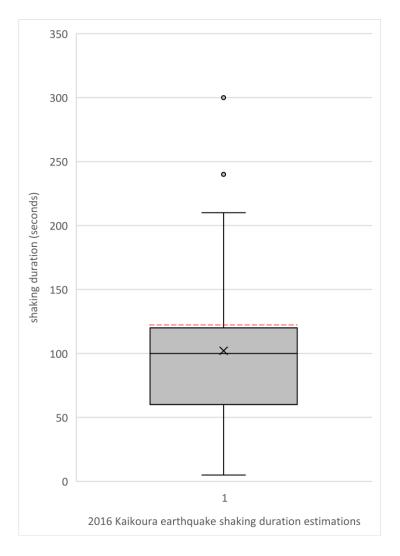


Figure 3.3-4: Box and whisker graph displaying the range of perceived shaking duration estimations. The red dashed line represents the 121 second instrumental earthquake shaking of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The 'x' represents the median value of perceived earthquake shaking.

# 3.3.3.2 2016 Kaikōura earthquake immediate response

The next stage of the evacuation process is gaining an understanding of the immediate response following the initial shaking of the earthquake. Respondents were asked to provide a detailed explanation of their behaviour and movements following the earthquake shaking. Key conclusions drawn from respondent's answers include:

- Many respondents jumped out of bed (with family) and evacuated to outside of their property or on the road.
- Many residents said they evacuated immediately and drove to higher ground
- A number of respondents said they grabbed essential items e.g. torch, evacuation kit, warm clothes, handbags and keys.
- A few respondents said they turned off the hot water cylinder before evacuating, and others checked for damage to property.

 A number of respondents experienced difficulty getting their vehicles out of the garage due to no power or damage to garage.

Figure 3.3-5 represents the most frequent words used in respondent's statements on immediate response and gives insight as to what were the key response actions taken immediately after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake by Kaikōura residents.



Figure 3.3-5: Wordle representing the most frequent words (words that are bold and larger) of respondents explanations of their immediate actions following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

# 3.3.3.3 Pre-evacuation actions

Participants were asked what actions were taken prior to evacuating. Respondents were asked to tick all relevant actions they took before deciding to evacuate. Of the total respondents, 33% (n=36) reported they evacuated immediately, 32% (n=33) gathered with family or household members, and 20% (n=21) reported gathering life essentials. For a detailed breakdown of the question results, see Figure 3.3-6 below.

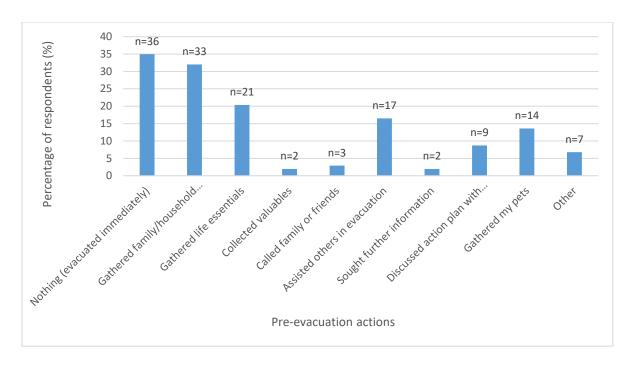


Figure 3.3-6: Bar graph displaying pre-evacuation actions following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

# 3.3.3.4 Evacuation response

Following the survey questions on perceived shaking intensity and duration, the survey asked if participants evacuated following the 2016 earthquake shaking. Of the total that responded to this question (n=127), 69% (n=88) of respondents reported they evacuated and 31% (n=39) did not evacuate (see Figure 3.3-7). Of the respondents who reported that they did not evacuate (31%), the reasons were due to:

- No need as they were already inland or on high ground (n=27)
- Felt safe in their home (n=8)
- Could not evacuate (either needed assistance or had damage to the property) (n=8)

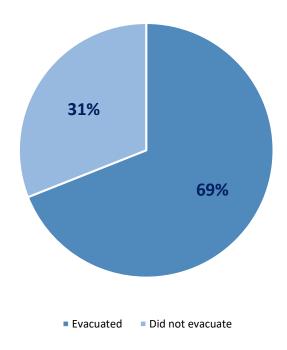


Figure 3.3-7: Pie chart representing the proportion of respondents who evacuated and did not evacuate following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Of those who provided their origin address and their response decision, 95% (n=61) who lived in a tsunami evacuation zone at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake evacuated during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Five percent of respondents resided in a tsunami evacuation zone and should of evacuated following the 2016 earthquake. In addition, those who resided in an evacuation zone and evacuated, 45% (n=19) of respondents who resided out of a tsunami evacuation zone stated they evacuated (Table 3.3-3).

Table 3.3-3: Table displaying evacuation rates of respondents who lived in and out of a tsunami evacuation zone at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Evacuation Response	Respondents who lived in a tsunami evacuation zone during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake	Respondents who did not live in tsunami evacuation zone during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake	Total
Evacuated	95% (n=61)	45% (n=19)	n=80
Did not evacuate	5% (n=3)	55% (n=23)	n=26
Total	100% (n=64)	100% (n=42)	n= 106

# 3.3.3.5 Reasons for evacuating

Participants were asked what factors influenced their reasoning for evacuating. Of the total who responded to this question (n=86), 79% (n=68) reported they evacuated because of a possible tsunami. The 21% (n=18) that reported that they evacuated but not because of possible tsunami, stated that they evacuated because they did not feel safe in their home (n=11), they wanted to be with friends and/or family (n=4), and a couple of respondents stated they were instructed to evacuate by NZ Police or Fire and Emergency New Zealand (n=2).

Survey respondents were asked their main reason for evacuating. Approximately 71% (n=63) selected the earthquake (strong ground shaking) itself was the main reason for evacuation, 10% (n=9) evacuated because of other family/household members and 7% (n=6) selected 'other community members' as their main reason for evacuating (see Figure 3.3-8). Respondents who stated 'other' included reasons such as the possibility of a tsunami due to the close proximity of living close to the sea and to look for family and friends. General comments in relation to the main reason for evacuating included;

- A natural reaction to evacuate to high ground after such a violent earthquake and being so close to the sea
- The tide receding
- Evacuated for personal safety reasons.

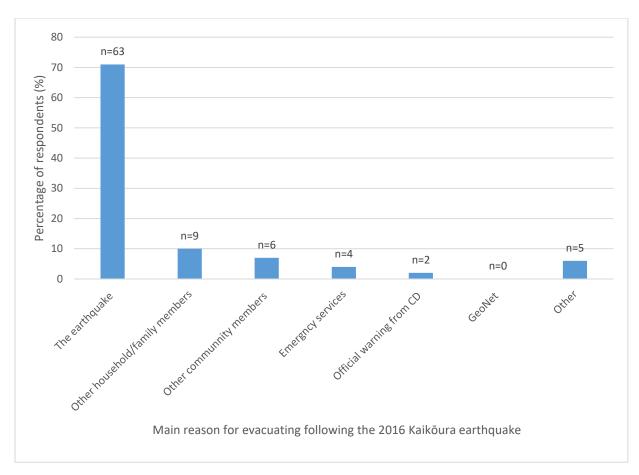


Figure 3.3-8: Bar graph displaying survey respondent's main reasoning for evacuating following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Participants were asked what warned them of a possible tsunami. Of the total who responded to this question (n=109), 75% (n=82) reported the earthquake itself as a natural warning, 15% (n=16) reported other household or family members warned them of a possible tsunami, 13% (n=14) selected other community members evacuating was a sign of a possible tsunami, and 12% (n=13) of respondents reported they received an official warning from Civil Defence. For a detailed breakdown of the total response to this question, see Figure 3.3-9. Respondents who selected 'other' stated additional reasons that warned them of a possible tsunami which included:

- Seeing other people evacuate in their cars (n=4)
- Listening to the radio (n=4)
- Knowledge of the 'Long OR Strong, get gone' public education campaign (n=5)
- Experience/knowledge of prior earthquake e.g. Canterbury Earthquake Sequence, 2011 Japan Earthquake and Tsunami and the 2004 Indonesian Tsunami (n=5)
- Observations of the ocean receding further out than usual (n=3).

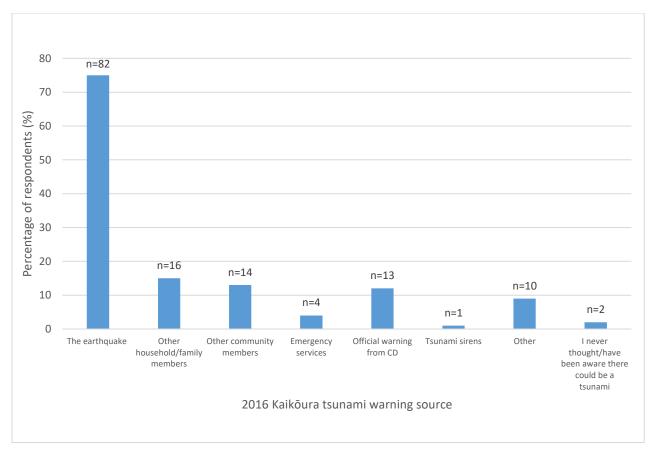


Figure 3.3-9: Bar graph displaying tsunami warning sources during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

### 3.3.4 2016 Kaikōura evacuation behaviour and movements

It is important for emergency managers, communities and other stakeholders to have an understanding of the origin – evacuation route – safe zone destination process participants took during the 2016 event. The results presented below provide valuable information to assist and inform emergency management with future evacuation response planning. This sub-section provides the results of the survey to better understand:

- 2016 evacuation response: origin-route-destination,
- · traffic congestion and speed estimates,
- evacuation response time, and
- additional evacuation dynamics.

### 3.3.4.1 2016 evacuation response: origin-route-destination

To understand evacuee origin – route – destination response to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, participants were asked to draw their evacuation route on a map provided in the questionnaire booklet or to provide a detailed description of their evacuation route. Figure 3.3-10 and Figure 3.3-11

represents a geospatial map of the 60 evacuation responses to the question. The purpose of this map is to identify key safe zone locations and evacuation routes taken during the night of the earthquake, and to identify congestion and any common commuting patterns following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Geographic information systems (GIS) was used to develop a heat map, representing the density of evacuees along a particular route (see Figure 3.3-10 and Figure 3.3-11). Dark red represents a greater number of evacuees along a particular route. The results reveal that the majority of evacuees evacuated to higher ground (on top of Kaikōura Peninsula or further inland) and a few respondents evacuated further inland. Due to the restricted road network to reach higher ground or further inland, many of the respondents evacuated along Torquay Street and Killarney Street, shown by the darker red colour (Figure 3.3-10). Beach Road and South Bay Parade – SH1 South also experienced high traffic volumes. Popular evacuation safe zone locations were the Kaikōura cemetery on Scarborough Street (top of Kaikōura Peninsula), Seaview subdivision as this was the highest elevation point, Churchill Park, and near the water towers, west of Kaikōura Peninsula (see Figure 3.3-10 and Figure 3.3-11). A few respondents stated that they tried evacuating further inland along Mill Road, however had to redirect their evacuation route to higher ground due to bridge failure and road damage. Subsidence was reported as a common obstacle during a number of evacuee's evacuation response routes, particularly respondents who had to evacuate along SH1 from South Bay Parade.

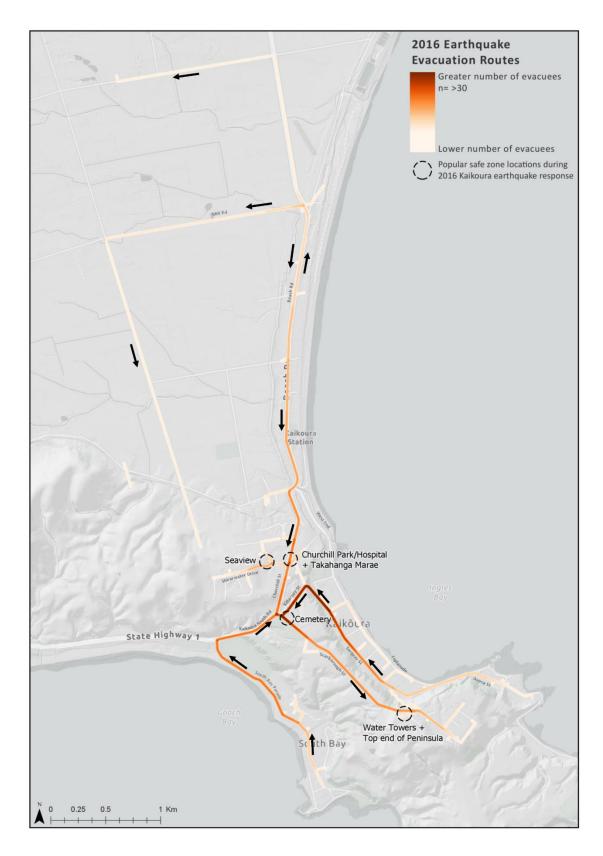


Figure 3.3-10: Geospatial heat map representing respondent's evacuation routes and common safe zone locations during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (Township scale). Arrows indicate the directions of where respondents evacuated to along the road network.

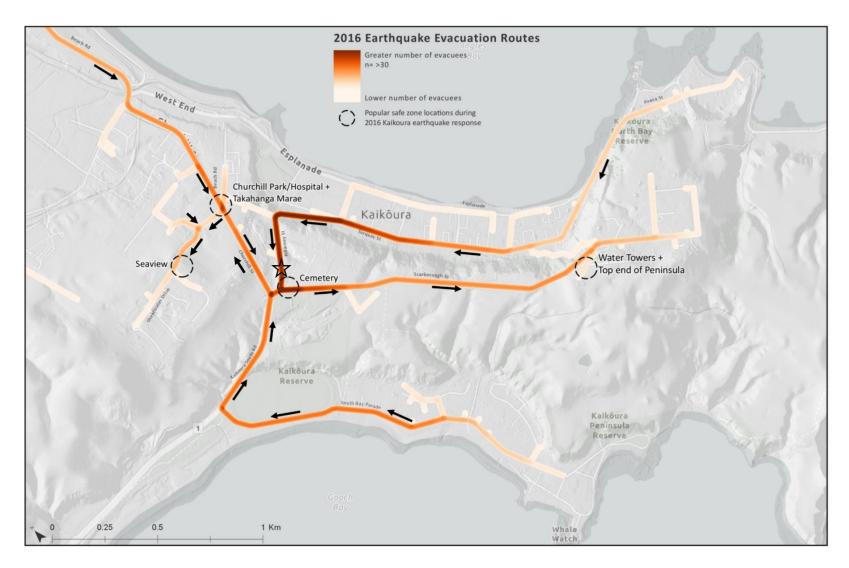


Figure 3.3-11: Geospatial heat map representing respondent's evacuation routes and common safe zone locations along Kaikōura Peninsula during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Arrows indicate directions of where respondents evacuated along the road network. The star represents where a lamp post fell cross the road during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

# 3.3.4.2 Traffic congestion and speed estimates

In addition to evacuee density along the road network as shown on Figure 3.3-9 and Figure 3.3-10 evacuee density results correspond to the observed traffic congestion during the 2016 Kaikōura response. Forty percent (n=35) of respondents, reported that they observed surges of traffic particularly along Killarney Street, also known as Post Office Cutting (see Figure 3.3-11), where numerous respondents stated a lamp post fell onto the road due to strong ground shaking. According to the respondents, a number of people were driving over the lamp post to get to higher ground. Another area the experienced traffic congestion was along Churchill Street. Many residents stopped near Churchill Park not allowing for other to pass to get to higher ground (see Figure 3.3-10 and Figure 3.3-11). Many respondents stated they observed high volumes of traffic at the Seaview subdivision (see Figure 3.3-11).

Respondents were asked to provide their best estimates of when traffic surges were observed. The time at which traffic surges were observed were soon after the earthquake shaking had stopped up until 04:00 a.m. the morning of the earthquake. Participants were also asked to provide their best estimate of how slow traffic was moving in these congested areas. The box and whisker graph displays the range of traffic speed estimates of vehicles during the 2016 Kaikōura response (Figure 3.3-12). Thirty-six respondents provided an answer for this question which resulted in vehicle speeds ranged of 0km/hr to 60km/hr with the mean traffic speed estimate of 18km/hr and median of 15km/hr.

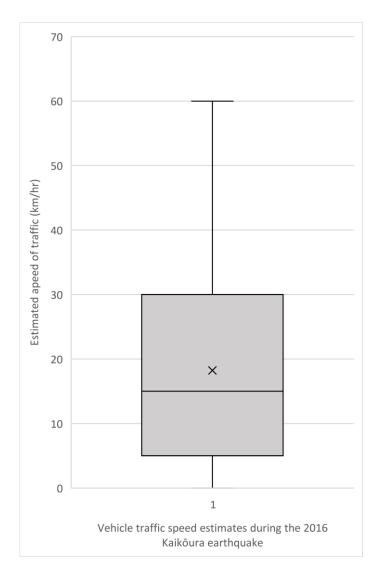


Figure 3.3-12: Box and whisker graph displaying the range and mean (X) traffic speed estimates of vehicles during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

# 3.3.4.3 Evacuation response time

Figure 3.3-13 displays the proportion of evacuees versus the time at which they decided to evacuate. Approximately 13% of respondents evacuated immediately after the earthquake shaking stopped. More than 55% of respondents had evacuated before the arrival of the first tsunami wave reached Kaikōura's coastline (within 10 minutes) and over 90% of respondents had evacuated by the time of which the tsunami highest point was measured on the Kaikōura sea level gauge 40 minutes after the earthquake (Borrero & Lane et al. 2017). A few respondents commented that they evacuated out of Kaikōura a couple of days after the earthquake as part of the official evacuation response.

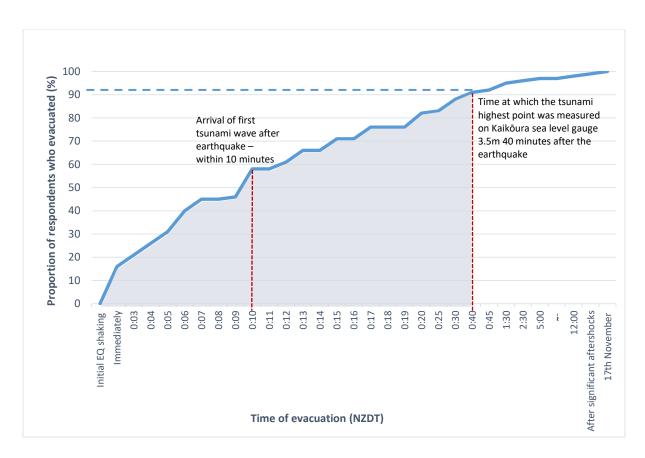


Figure 3.3-13: Correlation graph on the proportion of respondents who evacuated vs. the time at which they evacuated.

Participants were asked how long it took to reach their safe zone location once they started evacuating. The mean time it took for respondents to reach their safe zone locations was 6.6 minutes, and a median of 5 minutes. The fastest evacuation time was one minute and the longest time a respondent took to evacuate was 25 minutes (who reported evacuated on foot). Figure 3.3-14 examines the correlation between times taken to evacuate against the distance needing to reach safety. The R<sup>2</sup> value of 0.12 indicates that there is a strong negative correlation for these two factors.

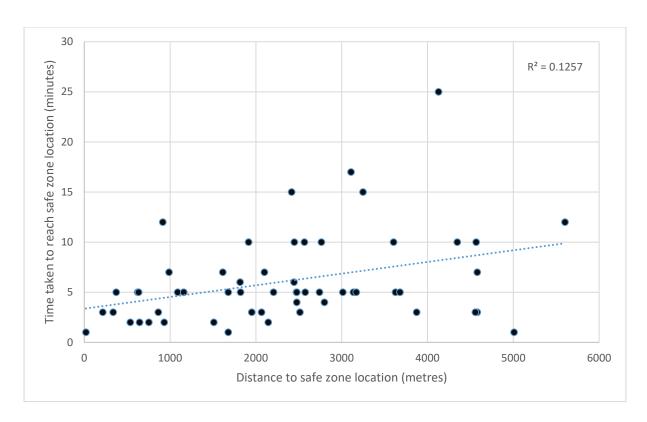


Figure 3.3-14: Correlation graph of survey respondent's time taken to evacuate to safety vs. the distance to reach safety.

# 3.3.4.4 Additional evacuation dynamics

Participants were asked if they evacuated more than once, of the total respondents 83% (n=91) of respondents did not evacuate more than once and the remainder of the respondents 17% (n=19) reported they evacuated at least once. Respondents reasoning's for evacuating more than once included:

- The need to check on friends and family (n=3)
- Evacuated multiple times due to large aftershocks (immediately after the earthquake and days following) (n=5)
- Going back to their property to retrieve personal belongings (n=2)
- Instructed to do so following the official warning (n=2)

Eighty nine percent (n=81) of participants were not in need of assistance during their 2016 evacuation response. Correspondingly, 11% (n=10) of respondents reported that they were in need of assistance to evacuate. All respondents that were in need of assistance, reported they received the assistance needed to evacuate. Respondents reported they needed assistance because of 'not having transport' (n=3) or were immobile or injured (n=2).

Respondents were asked how long they stayed at their evacuation point. Duration times ranged from 30 minutes to 48 hours. The most reported duration length was 6 hours (18%). Respondents were

asked for their reasoning's for deciding to return from their evacuation point. Of the total respondents who answered this question (n=87), 52% (n=45) of respondents reported they returned home when it felt safe to do so, 24% (n=21) reported they went home after discussing with others, and 20% of respondents went home after a reasonable time. Figure 3.3-15 provides a breakdown of the detailed results. One commonly reported reasoning's for deciding to return from their evacuation point include to assess property damage during daylight.

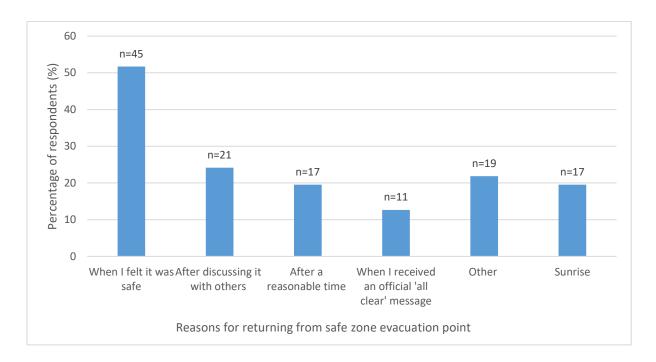


Figure 3.3-15: Bar graph of survey respondents reasoning's for returning from safe zone evacuation points.

# 3.3.5 Risk awareness and preparedness influence on evacuation behaviour

The results presented in this section provides and insight on respondent's level of tsunami risk awareness prior and after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and preparedness initiatives made to increase their resilience to future events. This was of particular interest to DRM agencies, ECAN and KDC CDEM, as it had been a major focus of preparedness efforts in the ten years prior to the Kaikōura earthquake (see Chapter 1).

Prior to the 2016 event, 44% (n=55) of respondents stated they had a 'good' understanding of tsunami risk and the need to evacuate in a long or strong earthquake, 25% (n=31) reported they had a very good level of knowledge, 21% (n=26) believe they had a fair level, and the reminding 10% reported they had poor, very poor or non-existent knowledge of tsunami risk prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (see Figure 3.3-16). Comparing respondents perceived level of tsunami hazard knowledge following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake show a considerable increase. The percentage of respondents

who reported themselves having a 'good' level of tsunami risk knowledge stayed around the same (46%, n=57). Notably there was a 25% increase of responds who classified themselves having a very good knowledge of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate after the 2016 earthquake. Figure 3.3-16 provides a breakdown of the survey results comparing tsunami knowledge prior and after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

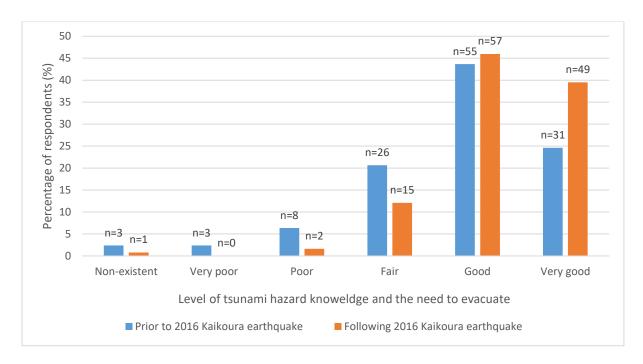


Figure 3.3-16: Bar graph of respondents level of tsunami knowledge and the need to evacuate prior to and following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Given the high level of tsunami hazard and evacuation education efforts prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, participants were asked what sources of information informed them about tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate. The four most commonly reported sources were media coverage on previous events (56%, n=69), Civil Defence information (50%, n=62), documentaries (44%, n=54), and discussions with friends and family (41%, n=51). Figure 3.3-17 provides a detailed breakdown of the total response to this question.

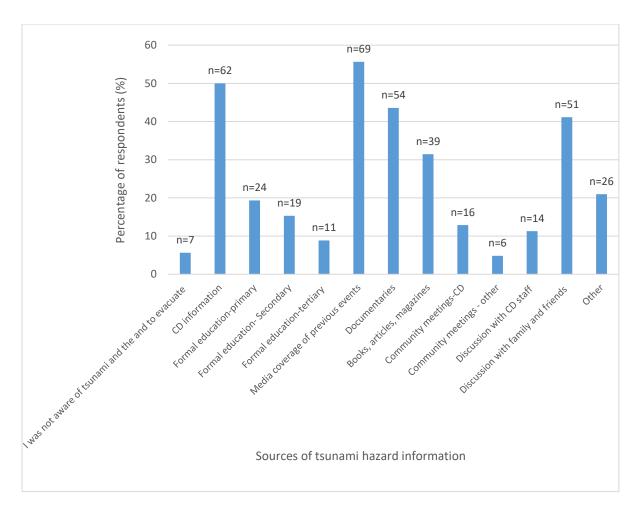


Figure 3.3-17: Sources of information on tsunami hazard and evacuation prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Respondents were asked what preparedness actions they took before and after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Figure 3.3-18 compares common actions taken before and after the 2016 event. Notably, a significant increase has occurred across all disaster preparedness actions. Over half of respondents stated they have discussed or prepared an evacuation plan with their family or household members and have prepared an emergency kit. Over 40% have prepared a go-bag containing essential items. Additional preparedness initiatives respondents have made since the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake include making themselves aware of Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zone information (17%, n=21), identified evacuation routes and safe zone destinations (37%, n=46), and 7% (n=9) of respondents have ensured easy access to online information updates in the case of a future event.

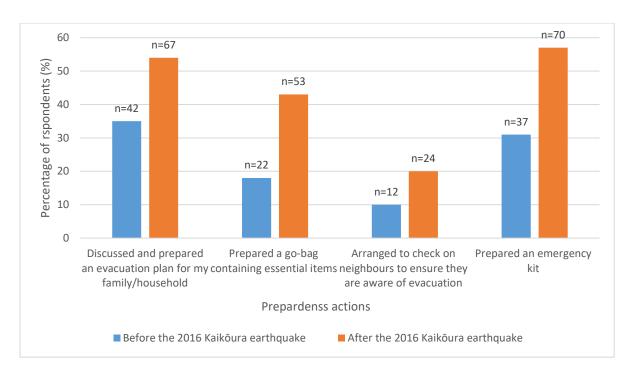


Figure 3.3-18: Earthquake and tsunami preparedness actions taken before and after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

### 3.4 Discussion

This section presents a discussion on the main findings and themes from the results of the 2016 Kaikōura evacuation survey. Key themes are discussed in relation to the complete evacuation processes framework developed by Makinoshima et al. (2020) presented in Chapter 2, section 2.4, with the addition of tsunami risk awareness influence on evacuation response. This section is presented for four key evacuation aspects.

- i. Tsunami risk awareness
- ii. Response phase
- iii. Evacuation movement phase
- iv. Additional phase

# 3.4.1 Tsunami risk awareness

As mentioned in Chapter 2, national and local Civil Defence Emergency Management in New Zealand has invested heavily in public education campaigns including 'Gets Ready' and 'Long OR Strong, Get Gone', to increase New Zealand's public awareness on earthquake and tsunami hazard risk and appropriate protection actions in the case of a large earthquake and tsunami event (MCDEM, 2018). These education campaigns reiterates the importance of using natural warnings (earthquake) to self-

evacuate if an earthquake is long or strong (Fraser et al. 2016; MCDEM, 2016). The Kaikōura community has experienced over ten years of Civil Defence Emergency Management engagement on increasing awareness on local earthquake and tsunami risk (H Jack, Natural Hazard Analyst, Environment Canterbury, pers. Comm). Tsunami risk awareness initiatives include community engagement meetings and workshops (Kaikoura District Council, 2018), implementation of public education campaigns 'What's the Plan Stan' and 'Long Or Strong, Get Gone' through media outlets and resources (brochures and pamphlets), evacuation drills and exercises (ShakeOut), evacuation zone maps, and the recent development of 'Kaikōura Gets Ready' initiative, which provides Kaikōura District Council with community details to send real-time alerts during an emergency (Kaikōura Ditrict Council, 2018). Results on tsunami risk awareness presented in this chapter indicates the effectiveness on the implementation of these tsunami risk management initiative. A key finding of this is that prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, respondents reported they had a 'good' (44%, n=55) or 'very good' (25%, n=31) level of knowledge on tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate. Fifty percent of respondents acknowledged their prior awareness was attributed to Civil Defence Emergency Management information. This is likely to have contributed to a large portion (79%) of respondents who reported they evacuated did so due to a potential tsunami during and immediately after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Another key finding that indicates potential successful implementation of education and awareness on earthquake and tsunami risk in Kaikōura can be a reflection of a high proportion (71%) of respondent using the natural cue (earthquake) as the main reason to evacuate. A number of respondents reported they had knowledge on 'Long OR Strong, Get Gone'.

Prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, tsunami evacuation zones had not been developed for Kaikōura (H Jack, Natural Hazard Analyst, Environment Canterbury, pers. Comm). However, the vast majority (95%) of those living in a tsunami evacuation zone at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (n=64) reported they evacuated. This finding indicates respondents were aware of the immediate tsunami threat posed to the Kaikōura community.

Risk cognition can vary due to experience of past disaster events (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Knowledge or experience of significant earthquake-tsunami disasters can influence how the public perceive risk and the protective actions needing to take during an event. A number of respondents stated that they were aware of past earthquake-tsunami events including the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami as well as a number of respondents has experienced the effects of the 2010 Canterbury Earthquake Sequence. Having this knowledge of past events may have prompted immediate response actions during this event. Further research should explore this correlation including what actions they took immediately after the earthquake (e.g actions prior to evacuating and perceived earthquake shaking intensity).

# 3.4.2 Response phase

During the early response phase of an evacuation process, the first warning for a local earthquake induced tsunami is strong ground shaking (natural cue). The existence of knowledge that links strong ground shaking to the possibility of an earthquake-induced tsunami is essential for the interpretation of natural warnings and influence on evacuation decision-making (Gillard et al. 2018). The majority of respondents (17%, n=63) reported the main reasoning for evacuating during the 2016 Kaikōura event was the earthquake. Although the earthquake was the main reasoning for evacuating, 75% of respondents reported the earthquake was the warning of a possible tsunami. Figure 3.3-3 provides a geospatial output of respondent's perceived shaking intensity of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Many respondents perceived the shaking intensity to be strong (37%) or violent (56%). This could indicate strong or violent perceived ground shaking intensity prompted respondents to evacuate during the 2016 event. A few respondents commented that it 'is a natural reaction to evacuate to high ground after such a violent earthquake and being proximal to the sea'. Perceived shaking intensity and the need to evacuate could also be a reflection of the results presented in Table 3.3-3. Respondents who resided out of a tsunami evacuation zone (located on high ground or further inland) at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, 45% reported they evacuated. The main reasoning's for this included; not feeling safe in their home, strong aftershocks, and wanting to be with friends and family. The results of the immediate reaction to strong ground shaking indicates that Kaikoura respondents have a high level of knowledge of linking strong earthquake shaking intensity and the need to evacuate. A number of evacuation behaviour studies of past tsunami events have also found a strong correlation of strong ground shaking prompting evacuations or indication of a possible tsunami threat (Blake et al. 2018; Cabinet Office in Japan. 2012; Harnantyari et al. 2020; Katada et al. 2003; Lindell et al. 2015; Murakami et al. 2012; Ushiyama & Imamura, 2003). Figure 3.4-2 provides a correlation analysis of perceived shaking intensity and duration of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Whilst, the importance should focus on shaking intensity for the Kaikōura context (proximal source is likely to experience strong shaking rather than long shaking), Figure 3.4-2 shows that strong and violent shaking intensity was perceived across all binned perceived shaking duration times.

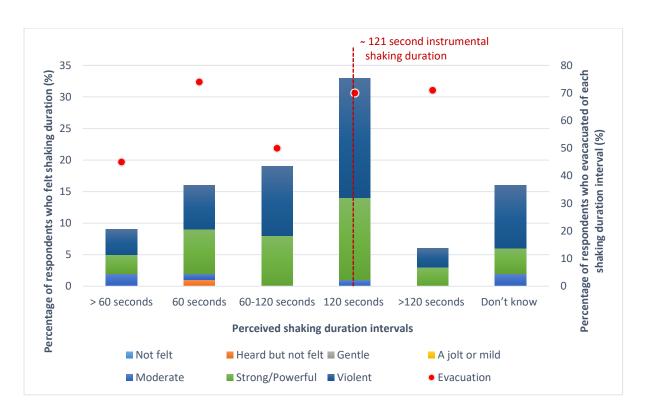


Figure 3.4-1: Percentage of respondents who evacuated compared with their perceived shaking intensity and shaking duration of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Although the survey results indicate the natural cue (earthquake and strong ground shaking) prompted evacuation response of Kaikōura respondents, recent evacuation survey research in New Zealand suggests the public has a heavy reliance on official warnings before deciding to evacuate, this includes receiving an official tsunami threat or warning message via radio, social media and television, or sounding of tsunami sirens which ultimately result in a delay in evacuation departure (Barnhill, 2020; Blake et al. 2018; Hall et al. 2017; Fraser et al. 2016; Currie, 2013; Fraser et al. 2013).). Although similar evacuation rates were observed in Blake et al. (2018) and Barnhill (2020) to what was reported in this research, these studies analysed evacuation behaviour following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami at a regional scale response (1-3 hours for tsunami wave to arrive at the coast). Blake et al. (2020) analysed evacuation behaviour of two coastal areas in the Wellington region: Petone and Eastbourne. Blake et al. 2018 results concluded 70% of respondents evacuated at some stage after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, however the highest proportion (21%) of respondents evacuated because of an official warning. Barnhill (2020) analysed evacuation behaviour of Eastern Christchurch and Banks Peninsula following the 2016 Kaikoura earthquake. The results revealed that Eastern Christchurch had an evacuation response rate of 81% and a 50% evacuation rate for Banks Peninsula, however a heavy reliance was on tsunami siren activation to prompt evacuation. However, it important to note, and as outlined in Chapter one, Canterbury and other regions in New Zealand experienced an inconsistent official warning environment (see Section 1.4-2).

For an effective evacuation process, the response phase of pre-evacuation actions should be minimum to allow for sufficient time to evacuate to safety (Makinoshima et al. 2020). Makinoshima et al. 2020 concludes that various response activities have been observed in past tsunami events. A common response activity is collecting additional information to inform their evacuation decision (Lindell, et al. 2015; Fraser et al. 2016; Blake et al 2018). The results of this survey reveal the highest proportion of respondents (35%) took no pre-evacuation actions and evacuated immediately. This indicates Kaikōura respondents had a minimum delay time prior to evacuating. The prompt evacuation movement without conducting pre-evacuation actions reflects the relatively high rate of respondents evacuating within 10 minutes (55%) (Figure 3.3-12). This was a higher compliance rate compared to what was observed during the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami where only 32.5% of people started evacuating before 10 minutes and approximately 50% conducted their evacuation within 30 minutes of the earthquake (Makinoshima, 2020). However, it did take 40 minutes for 90% of respondents to evacuate to safety. This raises concerns around evacuation movement time for future local-source tsunami events, especially tsunami generated from a submarine landslide in the Kaikōura Canyon or an earthquake rupture along the southern end of the Hikurangi subduction zone, which could results in tsunami waves arriving at the coast in a matter of minutes (Power et al. 2017).

### 3.4.3 Evacuation movement phase

One area that has received little attention in evacuation behaviour literature, are factors that influence the decision on the mode of transport taken during a tsunami evacuation response, such as the use of personal vehicles, walking or running, or using public transport (Makinoshima, et al. 2020; Wood et al. 2018). Due to the sudden onset and little to no warning for a local source tsunami, the use of vehicles in a spontaneous response can result in evacuation complications such as congestion and gridlock traffic (Wood et al. 2018 Shimamoto et al. 2017; Mas et al. 2013; Okushima & Yamanaka, 2012). Although previous studies have identified that evacuating by foot would be more safe and efficient (Henry et al. 2017; Di Mauro et al. 2013), international survey literature reveals that private vehicles are the primary travel mode during a tsunami evacuation response (Fraser et al. 2013). This was observed in during the 2009 Samoa Earthquake and tsunami (53.8%), Illepal (Chile) Earthquake and Tsunami (59.8%), 2011 Great East Japan tsunami (52.5%). This was reported during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake response, where 85% of survey respondents evacuated by car and only 15% evacuated on foot (walk or ran). Given the close proximity to high elevations (Kaikōura Peninsula) and short distances to reach safety, an assumption would have been a higher pedestrian evacuation response rate. However, many factors could have influenced respondents decision to evacuate by car including the time of day at which the earthquake occurred (00:02 NZDT), checking on friends and family, transporting family member's and essential items, and having a place of shelter during the hours following the earthquake.

Comparatively, vehicle rates align with other tsunami survey studies in New Zealand. Barnhill (2020) survey results revealed that 96% (n=15) of respondents in Banks Peninsula and Eastern Christchurch evacuated by car and only 3% (n=4) evacuated on foot and Blake et al. (2018) survey results reported that 64% of all survey respondents evacuated by car. Additional survey research looking at evacuation intentions in New Zealand found a similar result of around 60% of respondents reporting that they intend to evacuate by car (Currie et al. 2013; Fraser et al. 2013). Moreover, international literature corresponds to these findings where Murakami et al. (2012) analysed evacuation behaviour following the 2011 Japan earthquake which reported 65% or respondents evacuate bay car. Further work should understand the reasoning's of deciding to use a vehicle, particularly for Kaikōura, given the close proximity to safety. Understanding the favoured travel modes essential for evacuation planning.

An important factor that could influence evacuation response rates and time taken to evacuate, is analysing the demographic composition of households. The results of survey enable an analyses of living situation influence on the time taken to evacuate to safety (Figure 3.4-4). The highest proportion of respondents stated that they were classed as 'family without children', majority of which lived with their spouse or partner (based on comments provided). Of this composition, the highest percentage of respondents evacuated in 4 minutes of less (20%, n=17), followed by 5 minutes to evacuate (14%, n=11). The second highest proportion of respondents who evacuated in 4 minutes or less were 'family with children' (7%, n=6). Notably the composition of respondents who took longer to evacuate (11 minutes or greater) were respondents who classified their living situation as 'alone'.

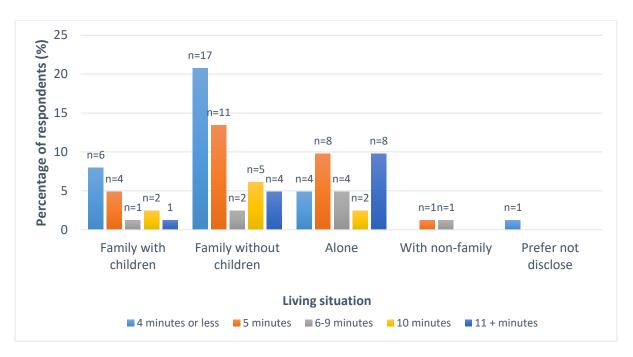


Figure 3.4-2: Living situation influence on the time taken to evacuate during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Participants were asked if they would take an alternative route in the case of a future event. Seventy six percent (n=67) of respondents stated they would not consider an alternative evacuation route to the evacuation response route they took during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. This likely due to the restricted road network leading to higher ground (State Highway 1 -SH1). Twelve percent (n=11) of respondents reported they would take an alternative evacuation route in the case of a future earthquake and tsunami event, see Figure 3.4-5 for reported alternative routes. The majority of respondents who reported that would use an alternative route stated they would evacuate on foot along designated tracks leading to the top of Kaikōura Peninsula.

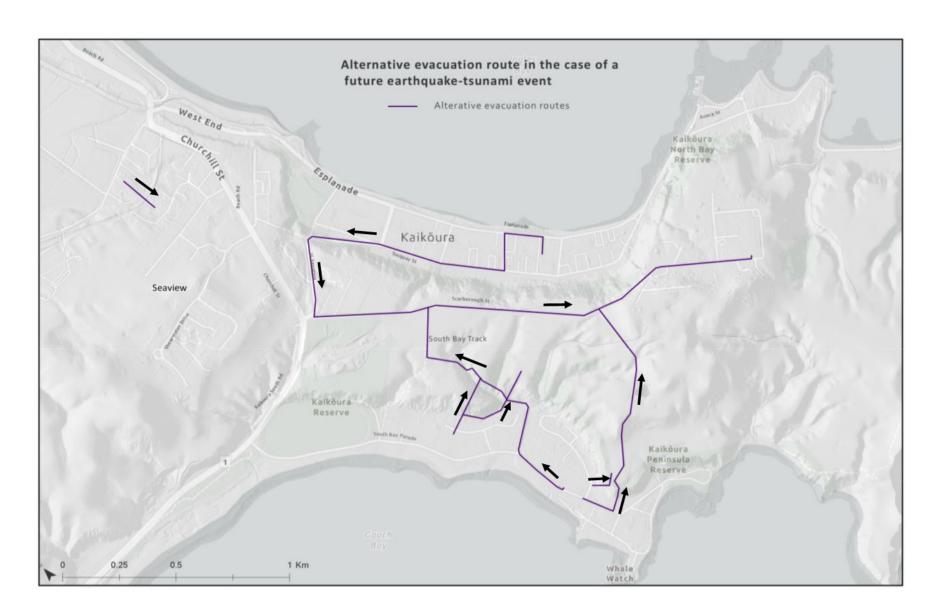


Figure 3.4-3: Geospatial map displaying alternative evacuation routes for a future earthquake and tsunami event.

### 3.4.4 Additional phase

Once respondents complete their evacuation movements to safe zone locations, people may take additional actions (Makinshima et al. 2020). For example return to their homes to retrieve additional belongings or check on friends or family members (Makinoshima et al. 2020; Cabinet Office, 2012). Additional evacuation actions were reported by Kaikōura respondents, this includes checking on neighbours and convened once they had reached their safe zone location, went back to their property to check for damage and/or to collect essential items such as warm clothing, and collecting family members after evacuating.

#### 3.5 Recommendations

This section presents recommendations addressing key conclusions drawn from the discussion presented in Section 3.4 and results presented in Section 3.3. Recommendations are provided to increase Kaikōura and New Zealand's tsunami risk management and evacuation response planning in the case of a future event.

**Public education** is a key component of raising awareness on disaster risk and preparedness, which ultimately increases community resilience for future events (Fraser et al. 2013). Preparedness ensures that people have the necessities in order to survive (Paton et al. 2008). Although survey respondents reported they had a high level of tsunami risk awareness, continued efforts through public education and engagement could advance risk awareness and preparedness through a better understanding of tsunami hazard, exposure and potential impacts. Efforts could focus on potential impacts and evacuation time estimates of the immediate tsunami threats posed by the Hikurangi trench and Kaikōura Canyon. This could be achieved through

- Continued efforts of promoting the 'Long or Strong, Get Gone' and 'Get Ready, Get Thru' national and local level public education campaigns. Further efforts could be continued on CDEM engagement through communication channels and community workshops. Fifty percent of survey respondents reported their tsunami risk awareness prior to the event, was attributed to Civil Defence Emergency Management information, therefore, through continuing these efforts, education campaigns are likely to increase Kaikōura population awareness on local-source tsunami risk. This would be beneficial for residents that have recently moved to Kaikōura and/or transient populations (seasonal workers).
- National, regional, and local level evacuation drills, including annual participation in New
   Zealand's national earthquake drill 'ShakeOut' and tsunami hīkoi. Practicing pre-planned

evacuation routes, annually or bi-annually will increase resident's confidence in their evacuation plan, by having knowledge of pre-identified routes, safe zone locations and estimates of the time taken to reach safety. It is recommended that all schools, work places and households participate in New Zealand's ShakeOut drill. Evacuation response actions could also be practiced of National Tsunami Awareness Day.

- Implementation of tsunami signs, tsunami information boards, and tsunami 'Blue Lines' (WREMO, n.d). All three of these public education tools will be highly relevant for Kaikōura, especially spatio-temporal fluctuations of visiting populations travelling through or visiting Kaikōura. This would create awareness of the potential extent of a large earthquake and knowing how far to evacuate, directions of optimal evacuation routes, and awareness of tsunami evacuation zones. Recommended areas for the implementation of these initiatives includes:
  - Signs and information boards located along the Esplanade, Beach Road, South Bay and popular visitor attractions, for example the seal colony located on Kaikōura Peninsula.
  - Blue lines representing areas outside of the tsunami evacuation zone. However if Blue lines are considered, it should be encouraged that people keep evacuating past the blue lines to allow for other behind them to evacuate. This should be considered for potential congestion along Churchill Street and Killarney Street.
- Use key findings of this survey instrument to increase local tsunami risk awareness and knowledge of past experiences of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. This could be implemented through community meetings or workshops to increase the public's awareness on reported evacuation behaviour and movements trends such as designated safe zone locations, congestion observations, and evacuation delay time influence the potential of experiencing traffic congestion. Having an understanding of evacuation response of past events could improve future evacuation response.

**Survey research** - The results of this survey provides an improved understanding of response to natural warnings and evacuation behaviours of residents located in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 earthquake. The survey instrument developed for this research could be applied for other coastal communities to assess evacuation response behaviour during and following a future tsunami evacuation event.

Kaikōura, and many other coastal townships in New Zealand are dynamic places in terms of visitor populations thus, further survey research should explore evacuation response intentions of transient populations. The survey instrument develop for this research could be applied and adapted to improve

this understanding. Findings from this recommendation would be particularly useful for Kaikōura District Council CDEM to inform future tsunami evacuation planning.

**Evacuation infrastructure** - Eight-five percent of survey respondents evacuated by vehicle. To align with national campaigns and consistent public education messaging, pedestrian horizontal evacuation should be encouraged, particular for areas that are expected to experience traffic congestion in future events. Due to the high use of vehicles used in the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake response, results of survey such as known congestion barriers or areas can inform evacuation resilient infrastructure. This could include the development or improvements of designated tracks for example walking tracks north and south of the base of Kaikōura Peninsula (Dempsy Track, South Bay Track). Improvements such as handrails and lighting would ensure safer and more efficient evacuation.

One aspect this research wish to have explored was to capture Maori narratives and oral histories of tsunami hazard and learning opportunities of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Capturing this knowledge and information may be valuable for iwi, hapu, awareness of tsunami risk and how this can inform decision-making, communication and Maori response and recovery plans.

# 3.6 Limitations

This section outlines the limitations and uncertainties on the methodology and results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey.

Firstly, the aim of the survey was to capture as many survey response from residents and hoteliers located in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Of the total surveys distributed (n=1105), 131 were retuned. The results presented in this chapter only represents a portion of Kaikōura township's response actions and evacuation behaviours following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. Therefore, limitations to this approach may include a bias towards certain evacuation and response actions made and/or observed during the event and does not account for all evacuations behaviours and actions that may have been taken by other residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.

Whilst the 12.4% survey return rate of this research aligns with other national tsunami survey research return rates (Barnhill, 2020; Blake et al. 2019; Dhellemmes et al. 2016; Fraser et al. 2016), the survey return rate is relatively low. This could be a reflection of the research being conducted more than two years after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The delayed time of conducting this research more than two years after the 2016 event may have led to a bias of respondents who completed the survey e.g.

demographic bias. Another limitation of conducting this research 2 years after the event could be the influence on accurate estimations and perceptions of evacuation response behaviours and dynamics respondents took following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. An example of this could be estimated evacuation travel speeds and evacuation delay times. Therefore the results presented in this chapter relies on accurate and honest answers reported in the survey booklets.

Another limitation of the evacuation instrument was survey incompleteness. Many of the survey respondents to did not complete all questions of the survey booklet. Response rate varied for certain questions in particular certain sections of the survey. Many respondents provided answers for the first third and last third part of the questionnaire. A low response rate was received particularly on questions asking about congestion observations, evacuation time estimates, and origin-route-destination maps (middle section of the survey). A number of reasons could allude to incompleteness of survey booklets for example, the longevity of the survey. It was estimated to take between 15-20 minutes to complete the 42 questions provided in the booklet. Respondents may have perceived this survey instrument to take too long to complete therefore, only answering the tick-box questions or leaving certain questions blank.

Manual digitisation was applied to develop maps representing the evacuation response of the Kaikōura Township (see Figure 3.3-10 and Figure 3.3-11). Respondents who provided their origin – route – destination evacuation response on the geospatial map is assumed to be accurate, however respondents who provided a written explanation of their evacuation response was manually digitised. Therefore, the results of the maps provided in Section 3.4, incorporates estimated evacuation routes based on written descriptions.

After reviewing the results of the survey, there was a missed opportunity to explore certain aspects on the tsunami evacuation response. Additional questions that could have be incorporated into the survey instrument could include questions on:

- Awareness and knowledge on current national and local tsunami public education campaigns including knowledge on actions to warnings (natural and/or official) and the need to evacuate (Long Or Strong, Get Gone).
- Emergency Mobile Alerts analyse the capacity of respondents receiving an official warning, or understanding if EMA's would influence evacuation response.
- Participation rates in evacuation practice drills understanding if respondents have participated and/or seek to participate in future earthquake drills and tsunami evacuation hīkoi's.

# 3.7 Future research and opportunities

To address the limitations discussed in Section 3.6, this section suggests additional tsunami evacuation research and future work to increase tsunami risk preparedness in Kaikōura. Suggestions can directly be applied at a national and global level.

- Further research could look into the applicability of the information derived from the results of the surveys to inform tsunami evacuation planning. This could include development of tsunami response plan for Kaikōura or other at risk communities in New Zealand. Response plans could include designated evacuation centres in the case of a future event, informing placement of tsunami evacuation signs and other tsunami awareness resources such as blue lines, and prioritising emergency personnel and assisting those in need of evacuating.
- Although this survey gained an insight on the level of tsunami risk awareness and preparedness of Kaikōura residents, future survey research could explore participation rates on community engagement meetings and workshops to analyse how such initiatives can influence disaster risk preparedness.
- Further work could analyse human displacement following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (days years). This could include a comprehensive overview of the official evacuation response of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and recovery process that took place following the immediate response. This should be an addition to the observations and results of the survey used in this research that has analysed the immediate evacuation response, to inform future emergency response planning.
- The survey used in this research was designed to collate evacuation response information from residents and hoteliers who resided in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura event. However, very limited data was captured from hoteliers. To produce a more comprehensive overview of the 2016 Kaikōura evacuation response, including behaviours of visitors in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, surveying hoteliers individually could improve the complete understanding of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake response.
- Future survey research could include additional questions on warning technology such as
   Emergency Mobile Alerts (EMA) and the influence on evacuation response. This could include
   analysing the capacity to receive EMA warnings and gather perceptions if EMA's would be an
   influential reason for evacuating. This is more broadly applicable to coastal areas communities
   that may experience a regional or distant source tsunami warning.
- Analyse how national evacuation behavioural survey research could be used to inform natural hazard land-use planning.

# 3.8 Conclusion

A questionnaire survey tool was developed to analyse Kaikōura resident's evacuation response following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and subsequent tsunami. The design and results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami survey contributes to addressing the global tsunami research gap by understanding a complete evacuation response of a real-event local source tsunami threat. Survey results of 131 Kaikōura residents was analysed to obtain a comprehensive understanding on warning and evacuation decision-making, evacuation behaviour and movements, and risk awareness and preparedness influence on evacuation behaviour. Key findings of the survey results include:

- Prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, respondents had a 'good' (44%, n=55) or 'very good' (25%, n=31) level of knowledge on tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate.
- Of the total survey respondents (n=131), 69% evacuated.
- A large proportion (79%, n=88) of respondents who reported that they evacuated did so due to the potential tsunami threat during and immediately after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.
- The vast majority (95%, n=64) of those living in the tsunami evacuation zone at the time reported that they evacuated. Almost half (45%) of respondents who were residing outside tsunami evacuation zones (n=42) evacuated, with most reporting that they did so because of 'severe shaking and aftershocks'.
- Reported congestion barriers included bridge failures, fallen lamp post, and road damage due
  to subsidence caused by the earthquake. These barriers slowed down evacuation time of
  some residents, particularly along Churchill Street and Killarney Street, adding minutes to their
  total evacuation time.
- More than half (55%) of respondents evacuated prior to the first tsunami wave was recorded
  after the earthquake (within 10 minutes). Ninety percent had reported they evacuated by the
  time of which the tsunami highest point was measured on the Kaikōura sea level gauge 40
  minutes after the earthquake.
- The time at which respondents stayed at their evacuation point ranged from 30 minutes to 48 hours. The most common reported time respondents stayed at their evacuation point was 6 hours (18%).
- The three most commonly reported preparedness actions residents have made following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake include; prepared an emergency kit with essential items (57%, n=70), discussed an evacuation plan with friends and family or household members (54%, n=67) and prepared a go bag containing essential items (43%, n=53).

The methodology and results of this chapter provides a framework to inform future tsunami evacuation research to better understand evacuation behaviour for other at risk communities in New Zealand and globally. In addition to this, the findings of this chapter can directly contribute to local, national and global tsunami risk management and tsunami response planning.

# 3.9 Summary and link to next chapter

This chapter addressed Objective one of this thesis: understand evacuation behaviour and dynamics of Kaikōura residents following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and subsequent tsunami. Through the use of a survey instrument, results on respondent's evacuation response was analysed and presented in the form of quantitative and qualitative statistics, graphs and geospatial maps. The following chapter uses key findings of the survey results to inform the development of a more realistic network-based tsunami evacuation model for Kaikōura.

# Chapter 4: Network evacuation model for Kaikōura

### 4.1 Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to address research objectives 2: develop an evacuation modelling framework and test by modelling likely evacuation behaviours of coastal Kaikōura residents, to ensure that it is applicable to other communities at risk from tsunami in New Zealand and internationally. First, a summarised literature review on tsunami evacuation modelling is presented, identifying a research knowledge gap and highlighting the importance of the present research (Section 4.1), an overview of the developed framework and method used to determine evacuation time estimates applying a network-based model is presented (Section 4.2). Third, the results of the exposure inventory and network-based evacuation modelling outputs are presented. Fourth, a discussion draws upon key findings of the evacuation modelling results, with a focus on the contribution to the identified knowledge gap. Fifth, limitations and a summary is presented on the evacuation model in this chapter (Section 4.5).

Prompt evacuations of at-risk coastal areas can prevent or minimise loss of life from tsunamis (Fraser et al. 2014; Shahabi & Wilson, 2014; Power et al. 2020). As noted in chapter 1 and 2, local source tsunami can potentially inundate low-lying coastal communities within a matter of minutes, thus it is vital evacuation planning is carried for exposed and/or vulnerable areas (Power, 2020; UNESCO, 2020). Evacuation preparedness should include well-planned evacuation routes and refuges to maximise the number of evacuees reaching safe zone locations during an event (Wood et al. 2014). Evacuation modelling is an important tool for estimating exposure to tsunami hazard and the time taken to evacuate out of the hazard zone to safety (Fraser et al. 2014; Le, 2016; Wood et al. 2018;). To date, a number of evacuation modelling methods have been applied to tsunami evacuation research however, very few publications have incorporated 'real event' evacuation parameters to improve realistic evacuation modelling outputs (Kubisch et al. 2020; Wood et al. 2018). This research addresses this global tsunami science research gap by incorporating an empirical dataset detailing immediate reactions to warnings and evacuation behaviours following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (chapter 3), to develop a more realistic network-based tsunami evacuation model of the Kaikōura Township and South Bay. The methodological framework developed and used in this chapter provides a new approach for evacuation modelling in New Zealand, particularly in regards to the application of empirical data from the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake response. The method and results presented in this chapter can be an informative tool for tsunami evacuation planning and disaster risk management for coastal areas susceptible to tsunami in New Zealand and in the Pacific.

# 4.2 Network-based modelling evacuation planning tool method

This section provides an overview of the conceptual and methodological development of the network-based modelling evacuation planning tool. The aim of this framework is to be applicable for other coastal areas vulnerable to tsunami in New Zealand.

This section uses Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and data manipulation tools to demonstrate how to model and analyse exposure and produce evacuation modelling outputs, to better inform DRR initiatives. Figure 4.2-1 reflects the overall methodological framework used to determine the results in section 4.3. The following sections discusses the key components used to develop a tsunami evacuation model, using Kaikōura as a case study.

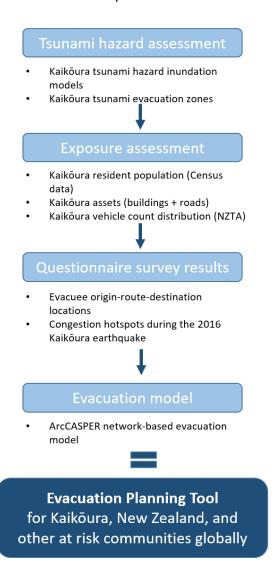


Figure 4.2-1: Methodological framework to develop a novel evacuation planning tool. The process identifies key input components to inform the development of the evacuation planning tool.

#### 4.2.1 Hazard assessment

Numerical tsunami inundation modelling has been conducted to model tsunami from local, regional and distant sources posed to Canterbury, including Kaikōura (Lane et al. 2014; Meuller et al. 2019). As noted in Chapter 2, tsunami evacuation zones are informed by numerical inundation models, incorporating a conservative approach (MCDEM, 2016). Tsunami evacuation zones have been used to determine maximum exposure of vulnerable communities in New Zealand and are considered an effective education tool to communicate tsunami risk and response information for natural and official warnings (MCDEM, 2016; Paulik et al. 2020). Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zones were used in this research as the hazard footprint to determine population and asset exposure. Kaikōura has two evacuation zones;

- 1. Red Evacuation Zone: shore exclusion zone to account for beaches and rivers, and
- 2. Orange Evacuation Zone: low-lying coastal areas likely to be inundated by a large tsunami. The envelope of this zone represents many possible 'credible' source tsunami scenarios with a 0.04% chance of happening in any one year (Environment Canterbury, 2020).

# 4.2.2 Exposure assessment

Effective tsunami risk management begins with assessing tsunami risk through the process of identification, analysis, and evaluation (MCDEM, 2019). This includes understanding the characteristics of the exposed population, assets and critical infrastructure exposed to tsunami for evacuation planning (MCDEM, 2019). An exposure inventory was developed as the fundamental output to determine population and assets in Kaikōura exposed to tsunami. Population statistics, building footprints and Kaikōura's road network were overlaid with the hazard footprint identified in Section 4.2.1, to determine the location and count of population and assets exposed within the Kaikōura Township and South Bay. The outputs of the exposure assessment are presented as maps and statistics (Section 4.3) to support tsunami risk management efforts in Kaikōura such as community level response plans.

### 4.2.2.1 Data collection, preparation and processing

Tsunami exposure assessments require accurate and reliable data to be sourced to perform geospatial analysis and data manipulation (adding, deleting, or modifying data). Online, open-source data portal (Koordinates, n.d) was used to download the most up-to-date asset and population spatial data and statistics for the Kaikōura district. Once the data inputs were sourced, both ArcGIS and Microsoft Excel were used to manipulate the three datasets to determine tsunami exposure of the Kaikōura Township (datasets presented in Table 4.2-1).

- Kaikōura population was identified using Statistics New Zealand '2013 Census Meshblocks'
   'usually resident population count' statistics (Statistics New Zealand, 2020).
- Buildings were used for the asset layer of the exposure inventory. Land Information New Zealand (LINZ) 'Building Outlines' shapefile was used as the base layer to determine building-use (LINZ, 2020a.) ArcGIS software was used to convert building polygons to centroid points. This dataset was digitally altered using Google Earth imagery to accurately assign a building-use category for each centroid point. The RiskScape building-use criteria was used for this dataset. This was applied to ensure an accurate representation of building-use for emergency management planning purposes and align with other local and national building exposure datasets.
- LINZ 'NZ Road Centrelines' were used for the critical infrastructure asset layer (LINZ, 2020b). The national layer was clipped to the case study area of this research.

Upon completion of data collection an editing, ArcGIS and Microsoft Excel were used to conduct a quantitative assessment and produce a map of population, assets and critical infrastructure exposed in Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zones.

Table 4.2-1: Open source data used for the exposure inventory.

Name of dataset	Description of attributes used	Reference
New Zealand Statistics 2013 Census	2013 Census meshblock level dataset used to identify usual resident population count clipped to Kaikōura Township. At the time of when this research was conducted this was the most up-to date meshblock level dataset available.	https://datafinder.stats.govt.nz/layer/8437-population-by-meshblock-2013-census/
NZ Buildings Outlines	Clipped dataset of New Zealand Buildings Outlines. This dataset captures outlines of polygons from the latest aerial imagery	https://data.linz.govt.nz/layer/101290-nz-building- outlines/
NZ Road Centrelines (Topo, 1:50k)	New Zealand's road network dataset clipped to Kaikōura District	https://data.linz.govt.nz/layer/50329-nz-road- centrelines-topo-150k/

#### 4.2.3 ArcCASPER Network-based evacuation model

First this section discusses data preparation and editing processes used to prepare inputs for the network-based tsunami evacuation modelling tool (ArcCAPSER). This is followed by the ARCASPER routing methods used to determine evacuation speeds and evacuee density along the road network.

ArcCASPER (Capacity-Aware Shortest path Evacuation routing) is a tool to perform capacity-constrained evacuation routing (Shahabi & Wilson, 2014). ArcCASPER is an extension of the ArcGIS Network Analyst tool designed as a prescriptive evacuation routing method. The tool is designed to perform evacuation modelling using more realistic parameters than the basic shortest path routing methods (Shahabi, 2012). The algorithm determines realistic traversal speeds for each road segment based on road capacity and the density of evacuees, to create optimal evacuation routes to ultimately minimise traffic congestion and evacuation times (Shahabi, 2012). An overview of inputs, process and outputs of the ArcCASPER network analyst tool is presented in Figure 4.2-2.

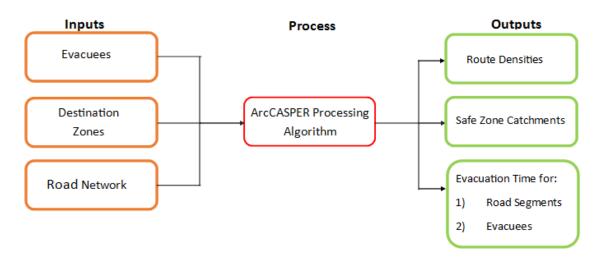


Figure 4.2-2: Overview of ArcCASPER network analyst evacuation model process. From Tilley (2018).

### 4.2.3.1 ArcCASPER data preparation

ArcCASPER requires four inputs for successful evacuation routing:

- Road network represents the road network which includes vertices and directional edges.
   Each edge has an impedance and capacity value. The road network input needs to be cleansed (remove unnecessary vertices) prior to modelling (Shahabi & Wilson, 2018);
- Origin locations –represents the evacuee locations or origin points and contains the vertices
  of where the evacuees are located prior to evacuating. Each origin point generates just one
  path to the destination point, whilst the evacuation path created uses a set of connected road
  segments that directs the evacuee to a safe zone (Albdouli, 2015);

- 3. Safe zone destination points represents the safe zone locations that evacuees will evacuate to. This input is similar to the source points in that the safe zones contain the vertices were the evacuees are evacuating to (Alabdouli, 2015);
- 4. Traffic model the traffic model assigned (Section 4.2.3.2) helps to predict traffic delays on certain road segments. These models represent real-world traffic parameters and ensures that there is minimal congestion, resulting in efficient flow of traffic.

# 4.2.3.1.1 Road Network

The road shapefile used in the exposure assessment (noted in Section 4.2.2.1) was the input used to build the road network dataset for the evacuation model. To accurately build the road network for ArcCASPER, every intersection in the road network had to be topologically correct i.e. each segment 'knows' it is connected to another one. This was manually completed using the 'Split' tool in the editing toolbar in ArcGIS. Several other attributes were required to build a road network appropriate for use in ArcCASPER evacuation modelling, attributes include;

- i. Length and time attribute of every road segment (polyline). The length of each segment was determined using the 'calculate geometry' tool in ArcGIS; this provided distance of each polyline in kilometres for the entire road network. New Zealand's road speed in urban areas is typically 50km/hr. A speed of 50km/hr was assigned to all roads, representing realistic travel speeds. The 'Field Calculator' tool was used to determine time in minutes using the equation: Time= (Length (metres/50)\*60).
- ii. Lane capacity attribute. A lane count attribute was already present in the New Zealand Transport Authority (NZTA) Road Centreline dataset. Primary and secondary roads in Kaikōura's road network has a lane count of two, with the exclusion of one-way bridges. For the purpose of this model it was assumed all roads in Kaikōura has a lane count of two.
- iii. A travel mode. 'Vehicle' was assigned to represent the common evacuation travel mode reported in the Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami survey (see Chapter 3).

# 4.2.3.1.2 Origin locations

The building asset centroid shapefile derived in the exposure assessment was used as the origin location input for the evacuation model. An additional attribute was added to this layer to represent vehicle count of each origin point. A value of "1" was assigned to each origin point. For the purpose of this evacuation model it was assumed every household would evacuate in one car, thus the number of people in each car is not considered relevant for the purpose of the model.

#### 4.2.3.1.3 Safe zone destination

A shapefile was created to represent four designated safe zone locations. The four safe zones locations were informed by the results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey (Chapter 3). The four safe zone locations reported in the survey were:

- Churchill Park
- Seaview subdivision
- Kaikōura Cemetery
- Takahanga Marae

#### 4.2.3.1.4 ArcCASPER traffic model

ArcCASPER's algorithm determines realistic travel speeds for each road segment based on road capacity, the number of evacuees and potential congestion barriers. ArcCASPER provides three optimisation methods:

- 1. Shortest Path (SP) this method searches for the shortest possible route for each evacuee. It is the simplest and quickest method, however it ignores all capacity components, thus providing less accurate results (Shahabi, 2012).
- Capacity Constrained Route Planner (CCRP) is a method that incorporates capacity while
  using the original evacuation network. CCRP gives priority to evacuees who have longer
  predicted evacuation times. Once the road network is fully saturated and becomes a
  bottleneck, the algorithm routes the rest of the evacuees on alternative routes (Shahabi &
  Wilson, 2014).
- 3. CASPER this method sorts evacuees by distance from the origin point to the closest safe zone. Starting with evacuees farthest away, the shortest route is identified and the evacuee assigned to it. The process is repeated until all evacuees have been assigned an evacuation route. During the process, CASPER updates each route segment travel cost based on the number of assigned evacuees and the edge capacity. The overall results will generate a route that will guide each evacuee to the best safe areas based on their origin point (Shahabi, 2012).

The CASPER method was chosen as the optimal evacuation method to model tsunami evacuation time estimates for Kaikōura. This was selected as other studies have shown that CASPER presents the most realistic model when incorporating behavioural or real-world data (Alabdouli, 2015).

#### 4.2.3.2 ArcCASPER vehicle evacuation model for Kaikōura

The ArcCASPER vehicle evacuation model used in this research represents an 'ideal' (no evacuation obstacles e.g. bridge collapse) residential night-time scenario. Vehicular mode of transport was selected for this model to represent the high portion (85%) of survey respondents reported evacuating by car during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami. Although a range of travel speeds were reported in the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey (0-60km/hr, mean=18 km/hr), in an ideal evacuation scenario, evacuees would travel at the speed limit. Therefore, a time attribute of 50 km/hr was assigned to all roads.

Figure 4.2-3 displays the evacuation settings used for the vehicle evacuation model for Kaikōura. Most of the properties were assigned the default option. Recommended by the developers of ArcCASPER, the Dynamic Mode was set to 'Smart'; this meant that every time the road network altered, the affected evacuees were rerouted. The 'Intl Delay Cost Per Evacuee' setting represents the initial space between evacuees that are sharing their start location. This translates to evacuee density on each road segment. This assigned default value was used for the evacuation model. 'Cost per Safe Zone Density' was also left as the default value 0. This represents unlimited capacity of evacuees assigned to each safe zone. 'Saturation Density per Unit Capacity' was left at the default value of 500; this value represents a demand increase on the road. The 'Flocking Model' was enabled for this research; this model simulates each evacuee (vehicle) second by second on the road network from origin to destination. The 'Flocking' simulation model allows for the identification of congestion hot spots through a more detailed analysis of evacuation routes. s

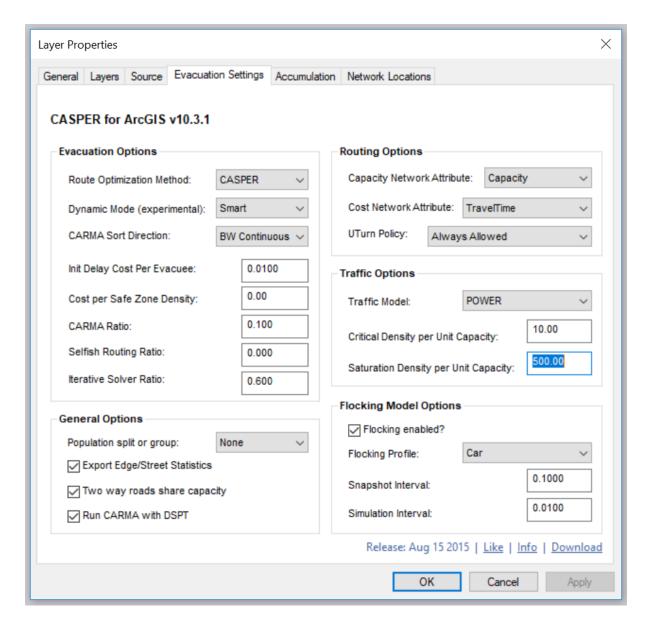


Figure 4.2-3: Evacuation settings applied to Kaikōura vehicle evacuation model. See text for details.

To improve accuracy of the ArcCASPER evacuation model, evacuation information gathered from survey respondents (Chapter 3) was used to inform realistic evacuation behaviour and movement. Survey questions used to inform and validate the evacuation model include:

- How did you travel to your evacuation destination? (mode of transport)
- Where did you evacuate to (origin-route-destination evacuation response)
- Did you encounter any traffic congestion or were you aware of congestion problems?
   (congestion barriers)
- On average, how slow do you think traffic was moving in these congested areas? (travel speed).

Based on the high percentage (85%) of survey respondents reporting they evacuated by car, a vehicular evacuation model was produced for Kaikōura.

#### 4.3 Results

This section presents the results of the tsunami exposure assessment, network-based evacuation modelling results, and field observations of pedestrian evacuation drills. The results presented below contribute to understanding risk to tsunami and evacuation planning in Kaikōura, and are applicable to other coastal areas exposed to tsunami in New Zealand.

#### 4.3.1 Results of the tsunami exposure assessment

Table 4.3-1 provides a quantitative summary of population, assets and critical infrastructure located in Kaikōura tsunami evacuation zones. The exposure assessment methodology concluded approximately 70% of Kaikōura's 'usually resident' population is located in Kaikōura orange tsunami evacuation zone. Topography and location of residential buildings located in Kaikōura are a contributing factor to this statistic. A total of 1056 buildings (assets) are located in the orange tsunami evacuation zone, majority of which are classified as residential dwellings (n=895) (see Figure 4.3-1). One hundred and eleven commercial business buildings are located in the tsunami evacuation zone, followed by 45 (n) commercial accommodation buildings, 4 (n) education facilities and 1 (n) emergency services building (Kaikōura Volunteer Fire Brigade). Very few assets were located in the red tsunami evacuation zone (shore exclusion zone e.g. beach and estuaries); these were commercial business sheds located near or on the foreshore zone. Primary and secondary roads of the Kaikōura's road network is located within the orange tsunami evacuation zone. Once the road segment was topographically corrected at each intersection junction, the results concluded 108 road segments totalling 31.8 km located in the orange tsunami evacuation zone.

Table 4.3-1: Tsunami exposure assessment for population, building assets and road network located within Kaikōura orange tsunami evacuation zone.

Tsunami exposure assessment	
Population (n)	n= 2748 (Total) in orange tsunami
	evacuation zone = 1941 = 70%
Buildings (n) – Orange evacuation zone	n=1056 (Total)
Emergency services	n=1
Educational facilities	n=4
Commercial accommodation	n=45
Commercial business	n=111
Residential dwellings	n=895
-	
Buildings (n) - Red evacuation zone	n=7 (Total)

108 (n) road segments are located in the orange tsunami evacuation zone. This equates to 31.8km of road.

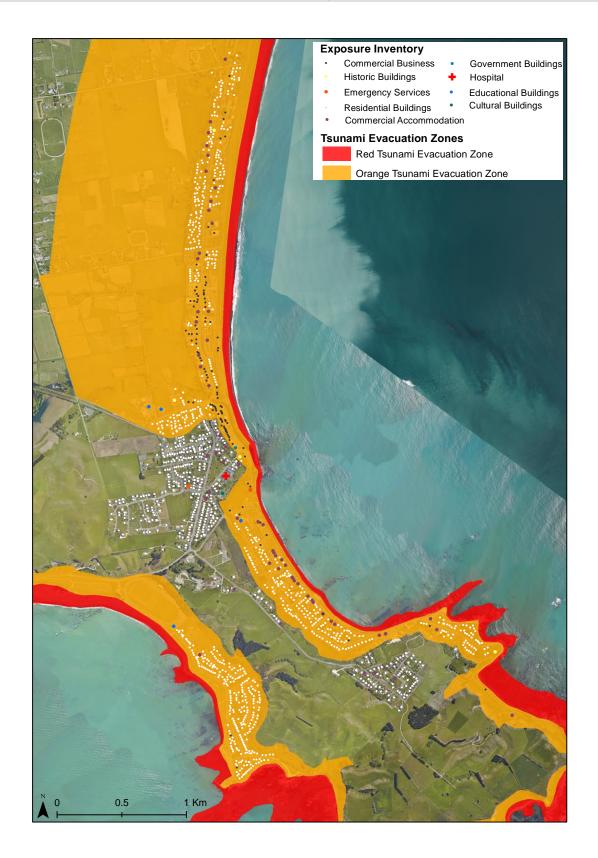


Figure 4.3-1: Exposure inventory of building assets located in Kaikoura, based on Kaikoura tsunami evacuation zones.

#### 4.3.2 Results of the ArcCASPER vehicle evacuation model

The following section presents the results of the ArcCASPER network-based vehicle evacuation model. Results are presented by maps and descriptive qualitative data as a direct results of the evacuation modelling inputs and the ArcCASPER optimization method used for this model. The ArcCASPER evacuation model provides an estimation on destination-catchment densities (allocated evacuation route and safe zone location), evacuee road density (number of vehicles travelling along each road segment), evacuation time to travel along each road segment and evacuation time to reach safety for each household. The total evacuation time for the entire Kaikōura township to evacuate to safety under an 'ideal scenario', is estimated to 12:05 minutes.

The evacuation modelling results are presented for the four key outputs below;

#### **Destination catchments densities**

Figure 4.3-2 (pg. 100) provides a visual output (map) representing assigned evacuation routes and safe zone destinations for all households located in the Kaikōura township. The results of this map show a distinct spatial correlation between origin locations and safe zone locations; vehicles (households) were assigned to the closest safe zone location. The output shows households located in South Bay and along the northern low-lying area of Kaikōura Peninsula would evacuate to Kaikōura Cemetery (represented by green). Households in South Bay and all households along Beach Road and the northern end of Churchill Street are predicted to evacuate to Churchill Park (represented by red). Households located out of the tsunami evacuation zone (located on higher ground) were accounted for in the evacuation model. Household in the immediate proximity to Takahanga Marae, Seaview Subdivision and Kaikōura 'water towers' were assigned to the closest safe zone destination e.g. residents living proximal to Takahanga Marae was assigned to the marae as its safe zone location.

## **Road Density**

Figure 4.3-3 (pg. 101) provides a visual output (map) representing vehicle count densities along each road segment required to evacuate the Kaikōura township to a safe zone destination. The results of this map is shown by road segment thickness (bold line represents a higher vehicle count). The results show a distinct correlation of primary roads (SH1 and Churchill Hill Street) experiencing a greater volume of evacuees. Scarborough Street (located on Kaikōura Peninsula, see Figure 4.3-3), is predicted to experience the largest volume of vehicles (greater than 600 along that road segment). Beach Road, Killarney Street, South Bay Parade and State High 1 South are key roads predicted to experience high

traffic volumes (greater than 200 vehicles). Secondary roads (e.g. side streets that connect to primary roads) are predicted to experience less vehicles traveling along these particular road segments. The results indicate potential congestion pinch points along certain road segments due to high vehicle density e.g. Killarney Street, Churchill Street and Scarborough Street.

#### Estimated evacuation time - Road Network

Figure 4.3-4 (pg. 102) provides a visual output estimating vehicle travel time along each road segment informed by road capacity, evacuee density and congestion potential. The results of this output estimated longer evacuation times along road segments that were further away from safe zone destinations. Travel time along each road segments varied. South Bay Parade, Fyffee Quay, and northern end of Beach Road are predicted to take the longest time to travel along due to the distance from the safe zone location (2 minutes or greater). Road segments closer to safe zone locations including Seaview subdivision and Churchill Park are predicted to take less time to travel along (less than one minute). It is important to note that predicted evacuation time is based on the length of road segment.

#### Estimated evacuation time - Vehicles

Figure 4.3-5 (pg 103) provides a visual output estimating evacuation time per vehicle (household) assuming that every household uses one vehicle to evacuate to safety. The results of this output predicts that evacuation time varies depending on origin location (location of household). Evacuation times ranged from less than one minute to greater than five minutes. Households along the north end of Beach Road, South Bay and along Avoca Street were estimated to take the longest time to reach safety (longer than 5 minutes). Households closer to safe zone locations is predicted to take less time to evacuate (less than 2 minutes). A correlation is shown; evacuation time to safety gradually increases as households are further away from a safe zone location. This is evident for households located along the north side of Kaikōura peninsula (see Figure 4.3-5).

## **Evcauation flocking model**

Figure 4.3-6 (pg 104) provides a visual output representing the result of the 'flocking model'. The results of the 'flocking model model represents vehicles (household, represented by a red dot) movements along Kaikōura's road network captured a 6-second intervals. The results of this output show vehicle density along road segments and at safe zone locations. Safe Zone locations show the greatest number of evacuees across the total evacuation time for the Kaikōura township. Road intersections are also shown to have a greater number of vehicles. Primary roads including SH1-south, Killarney Street, Churchill Street, and Scarborugh Street are predicted to experience congestion.

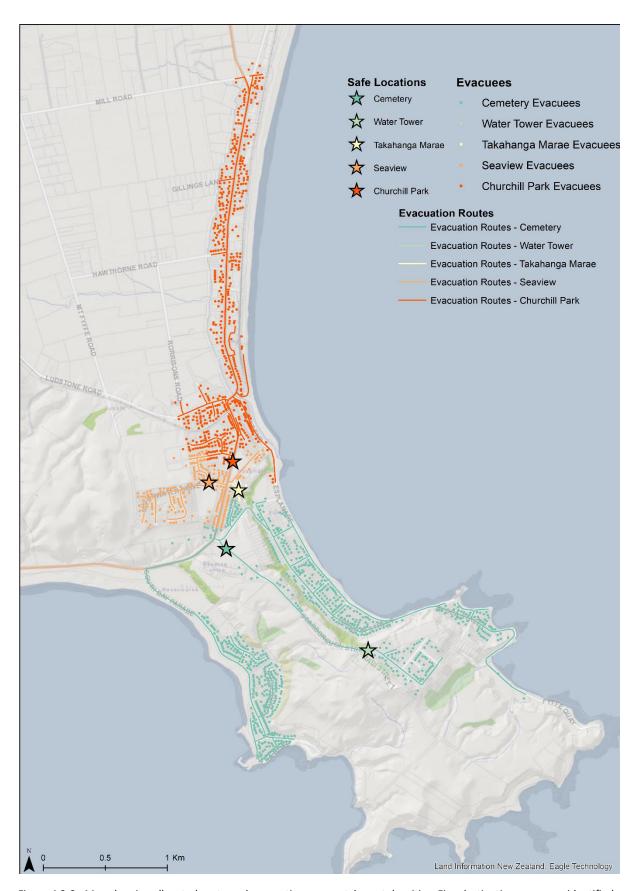


Figure 4.3-2: Map showing allocated route and evacuation zone catchment densities. Five destination zones are identified (Cemetery, Water Towers, Takahanga Marae, Seaview and Churchill Park), colours are coordinated with evacuees and allocated routes to those safe zone destinations.

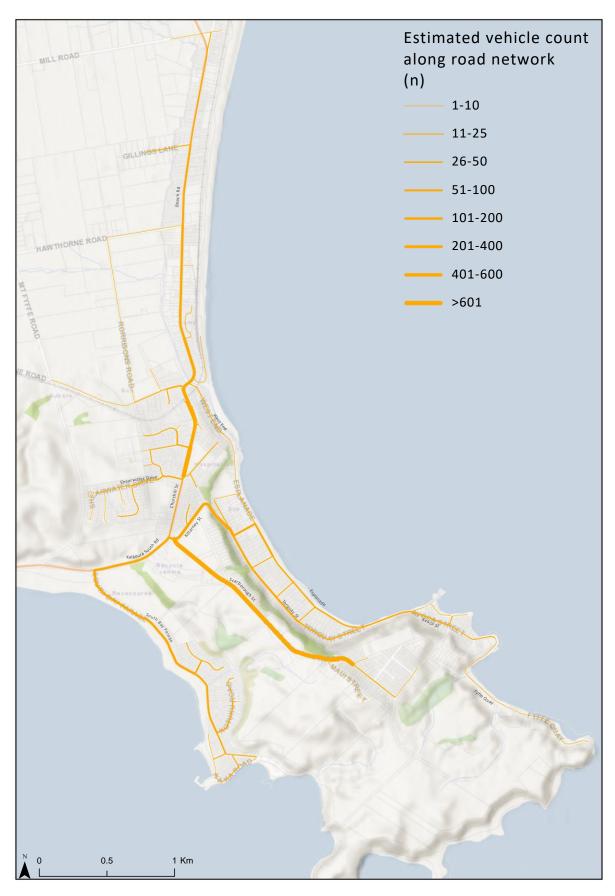


Figure 4.3-3: Map showing evacuation route densities. Each road segment was assigned a weight value (line thickness) to represent vehicle count. Bold lines represent high traffic density.

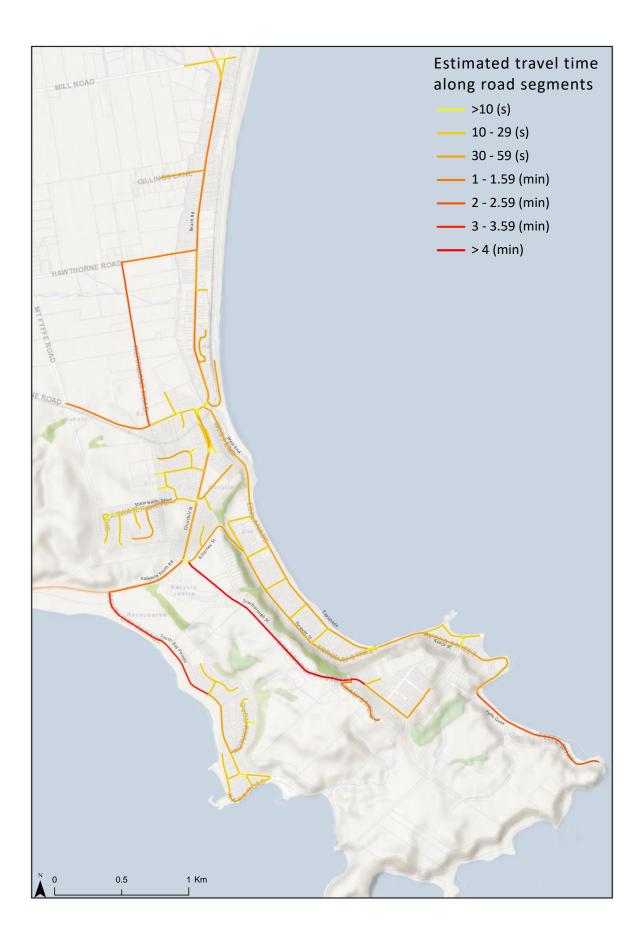


Figure 4.3-4: Map displaying predicted evacuation travel time along each road segment. Red represents greater evacuation time, yellow represents quicker time to travel along road segments.



Figure 4.3-5: Map displaying predicted evacuation travel time to reach safety for every household located in the township. Dark red represents longer evacuation time, yellow represents quicker evacuation times.

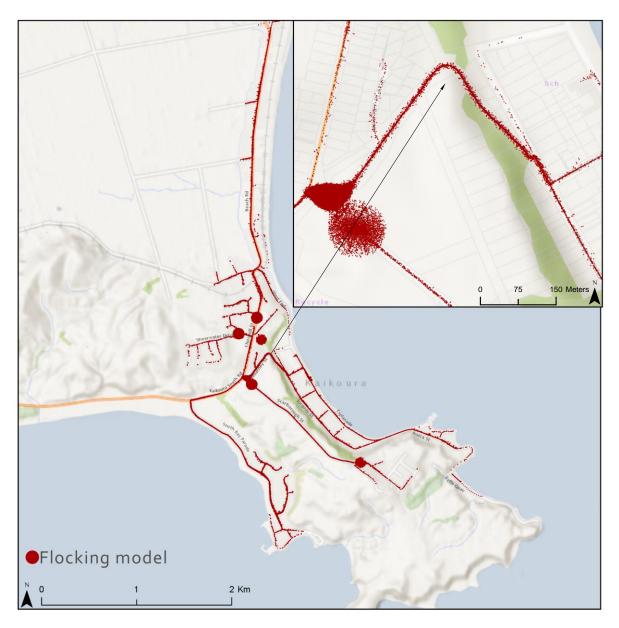


Figure 4.3-6: Map of the ArcCASPER flocking model results. An insert is presented of Killarney Street to show detailed evacuee (vehicle) points. The red dots represent simulation of vehicles along the road network of 6 second intervals.

## 4.4 Discussion

This sections presents a discussion on the main findings of the exposure assessment and results of the Kaikōura tsunami evacuation model. This section discusses more broadly the importance of understanding and including real event evacuation behaviour and movements and field data observations to improve evacuation planning. Although, evacuation modelling planning recommends incorporating various spatio-temporal evacuation scenarios, the purpose of this chapter was to test an evacuation modelling planning tool, with an 'ideal night time scenario' for Kaikōura township. The

discussion presented below discusses results with relevance to the one-scenario test in the evacuation model.

## 4.4.1 Discussion on tsunami exposure assessment

As previously stated in Chapter 2, effective tsunami risk management begins with assessing tsunami risk through the process of identification, analysis, and evaluation (MCDEM, 2019). This includes understanding the characteristics of the exposed population, assets and critical infrastructure located in a hazard zone. The exposure assessment undertaken for this research aimed to identify population, assets, and critical infrastructure located in Kaikōura's evacuation zones. The exposure assessment was developed at a high level (excluding vulnerability factors e.g. demographics) primarily as the inputs required for baseline data of the network-based tsunami evacuation model. The results of the synthesised tsunami exposure inventory concludes considerable exposure of the total resident population, assets, and critical infrastructure located within Kaikōura's tsunami evacuation zones (relative to population and assets located out of tsunami evacuation zones).

Spatial population data can be an important consideration for emergency response planning as this provides an indication of where residents could be located during a potential earthquake and tsunami event. Building exposure data can also be used as an indication to determine population exposure, particularly for defining the locations of visiting populations (e.g. commercial accommodation). Statistics New Zealand 2013 Census 'usually resident' population dataset was used for this exposure inventory. This indicated a high resident population density within the vicinity of south end of Beach Road, north side of Kaikōura Peninsula and South Bay. The results of the population dataset were consistent with residential building locations. This indicates exposed residential buildings primarily located in South Bay, north side of Kaikōura peninsula and a long Beach Road (85% of total residential building are located in the orange tsunami evacuation zone; see Figure 4.3-1). Although this exposure inventory analysed residential population exposure, Fraser et al. 2014, highlighted the importance to determine the maximum exposed at risk populations. To determine this, exposure models should consider day-time, night-time, and seasonal fluctuations of residents and visitors located in a tsunami evacuation zone (e.g. peak tourist season Dec-Feb). As stated in the introduction chapter of this thesis, Kaikōura is known as one of New Zealand's most popular tourism destinations in terms of day stops for both domestic and international visitors. For future evacuation planning, considerations should therefore be given to the potential spatial distribution of 'day-stop' visitors (i.e. no commercial accommodation or residential address).

## 4.4.2 Discussion on ArcCASPER evacuation modelling results

The following subsections present a discussion on the key findings of Kaikōura network evacuation modelling outputs.

## 4.4.2.1 Total evacuation cost of Kaikōura township

Under an 'ideal' night-time scenario, evacuation times of individual evacuee origin points (households) varied from less than one minute to over five minutes. The total evacuation time cost for all households located in the Kaikōura township to evacuate to one of the designated safe zone locations (Churchill Park, Kaikōura Cemetery, Seaview subdivision, Water Towers, and Takahanga Marae; see Figure 4.3-2) is estimated to take 12.05 minutes. This evacuation time is concerning, in terms of life safety for local-source tsunami threat. As mentioned in Chapter 2, it is estimated that an earthquake generated along the Hikurangi subduction zone could arrive at some locations of New Zealand's coast within 10 minutes, including Kaikōura, for a southern fault rupture (Mueller et al. 2019). For a southern Hikurangi source tsunami, the results of the evacuation model suggest that most of Kaikōura's residents are likely to evacuate prior to the first tsunami wave arrival. Consideration should be given to evacuation delay-time, prior to evacuation, including pre-evacuation actions such as gathering life essentials and checking on family. These pre-evacuation actions were reported by respondents during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake event. Although, an evacuation delay-cost time of one minute was applied to the evacuation model, this does not accurately represent real-world variations in evacuation delay times across individual households. A tsunami hazard with an even shorter wave arrival time is a local- Kaikōura canyon submarine landside-sourced event (Walters et al. 2006 a:b). It is estimated that wave arrival times from this potential source are within a matter of minutes event (Walters et al. 2006 a:b). This is concerning given that the evacuation model estimates a 12:05 minute evacuation time, for all households located in Kaikoura township. However, the total evacuation cost is modelled under an 'ideal night-time scenario', therefore evacuation times may exceed this estimation. Despite this, future evacuation events could see a reduction in this estimated evacuation time (12:05 minutes) if the results of this model (e.g. Figure 4.3-2) are effectively incorporated into the ongoing public education and awareness campaigns.

#### 4.4.2.2 Kaikōura evacuation model - destination catchment results

The results of the destination catchment map (see Figure 4.3-2) shows most, if not all vehicles were assigned to the closest safe zone evacuation destination from their origin location. This is a direct result of the ArcCASPER modelling approach to assign an optimal evacuation route for individual

households. The shortest path to a reported safe zone is favoured which represents an ideal evacuation response (i.e. minimum evacuation time). However, it is likely households will evacuate to additional safe zones to which those were reported during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (see Chapter 3). An example of this is that a number of survey respondents reported evacuating to Seaview subdivision or to Churchill Park, this contradicts the models output as ArcCASPER models all South Bay residents evacuating to Kaikōura cemetery, despite only a limited number of respondents reporting this as their specific evacuation location. Although many evacuated to the cemetery during the night of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, a number of residents evacuated to the other designated evacuation zones in this model. The results also indicate that households located on high ground, have been assigned a safe zone destination, however this may not reflect real-world evacuation behaviours of these households in future events. Similar results were presented in Evans (2020) and Tilley (2018), where most evacuees were assigned to the closest safe zone location.

Evacuation behaviour reported during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, indicated that people located out of a tsunami evacuation zone, primarily evacuated as a result of experiencing strong aftershocks. However, many reported that they only evacuated their dwelling (for earthquake safety) rather than evacuating to a safe zone (for tsunami safety).

#### 4.4.2.3 Kaikōura evacuation model - road density results

Vehicle count density is an important indication of the potential number of evacuees travelling along a particular road segment, which can identify potential road congestion. As stated in the results section of this chapter, the vehicle count output shows a strong correlation of high vehicle counts along road segments leading to a safe zone location (Section 4.3). This is particularly evident along Churchill Street, South Bay Parade, State Highway1 South and Killarney Street (see Figure 4.3-3). Survey response data validates this correlation using reported traffic congestion observations. During the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake a number of survey respondents reported they observed many cars evacuating up Churchill Street and Seaview subdivision. This suggests, that during an evacuation, roads leading out of a tsunami evacuation zone and towards the reported safe zones will likely experience higher vehicle counts relative to other road segments. This information could be useful for emergency managers in developing future evacuation response plans and implementation of tsunami risk management strategies, including for future revisions to the tsunami evacuation zones and for the potential placement of tsunami evacuation information boards.

## 4.4.2.4 Kaikōura evacuation model – evacuation time (road network)

Evacuation time estimates along certain road segments provides an indication of which road segments may take longer to evacuate along. Input characterises including how evacuation 'delay cost' influences the results of this output. As stated in the results section of this chapter (Section 4.3), evacuation time estimates varied across the entire road network and evacuation time estimates were dependent on the length of the road and vehicle count density. Although Churchill Park was reported as experiencing high vehicle counts, the road segments leading to the Churchill Park estimated to have lower evacuation time than other road segments in the immediate area. Road segments including Scarborough Street, South Bay Parade and Fyffee Ave are estimated to take the longest time to evacuate along. This is likely attributed to longer road segments and higher vehicle count, relative to the surrounding area, leading to a reported safe zone location.

#### 4.4.2.5 Kaikōura evacuation model – evacuation time (vehicles)

Evacuation time estimates along certain road segments provides an indication on how long a vehicle (household) may take to evacuate to reach safety. The results of the network evacuation model output provide estimates of varied evacuation time for individual households for the entire township (including households located on higher ground). The output shows there is an evident pattern of evacuation time increasing as the distance increases to reach safety. However, this model assigns the same evacuation delay time for all individual vehicles, therefore, this model does not represent the variation of evacuation delay time prior to evacuating (e.g. taking pre-evacuation actions).

The results of this evacuation model output can be validated using evacuation time estimates reported in the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami survey. The average time to reach a reported safe zone location was 6.6 minutes. This reflects a similar result to that of Figure 4.3-5, which estimates a large portion of households (primarily residing in a tsunami evacuation zone) taking longer than 5 minutes to evacuate. Self-reported data of the 2016 Kaikōura event, reported evacuation travel times to research safety ranged from one minute to 25 minutes, although the result shown in Figure 4.3-5 exceeded 5 minutes. This estimate could be assumed to reflect the range of evacuation times as was reported during the 2016 Kaikōura event.

Households located in South Bay, Avoca Street and the north end of Beach Road, were estimated to exceed 5 minutes to evacuate. This is likely to be a result of the distance needed to travel to safety and the potential congestion barriers that maybe experienced prior to reaching a designated safe zone

location (vehicles evacuation that are closer to designated safe zone locations). This evacuation modelling output could be used to inform evacuation response planning. An example of this could be the prioritisation of tsunami evacuation boards and signs to increase awareness of optimal evacuation routes to safety for both resident and visiting populations.

## 4.4.2.6 Kaikōura evacuation model – flocking model

The flock simulation model allows for the identification of congestion hot spots through a more detailed analysis of evacuation routes (Trindale et al. 2017). A lower concentration of 'flocking' points means that either more fluid movement of evacuees is occurring along the road network, or there is a speed reduction, indicating potential stand still traffic and crowded locations (Trindale et al. 2017). Examining the results of the flock map, all five safe zone locations experience dense clusters (Figure 4.3-6). This indicates that stand still traffic is likely when evacuees arrive at their safe zone location (assume they stop and do not move to another location). In addition to the five key cluster points, a number of intersection along Kaikōura network shows congestion (dense point cluster), this is particularly evident for road segments leading to a designated safe zone location. An example of this is at 'Post Office Cutting' (Killarney Street) (see insert map on Figure 4.3-6). Other examples of potential congestion, as indicated on the flock map, occur at intersections connecting side roads or 'secondary roads' to primary roads to reported safe locations. This occurs at intersections in South Bay, specifically Kotuku Road and Takaha Drive intersecting South Bay Parade. Congestion reported in the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami survey (Chapter 3) validates the results of the flocking model. There is an evident correlation between the flocking model map and reported evacuation routes taken during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake (Section 3.3). Although assumed traffic congestion is likely to be a result of high vehicle counts along particular road segments, qualitative survey data reported traffic congestion at Post Office Cutting (Killarney Street), Churchill Street, and Seaview subdivision. The results of the flocking model and validation of the model based on survey response data, provides a realistic output that could potentially be used as a traffic planning tool for Civil Defence Emergency Management or official agencies (e.g. police), prior to or during an emergency response. This tool can provide an indication of where certain locations may need prioritisation during an emergency event.

## 4.4.2.7 Mode of transport and inclusion of empirical data

The ArcCASPER modelling tool was selected as it is able to model vehicle evacuation. Although this tool can model various transportation methods, including vehicle, pedestrian and bike, the evacuation algorithm built into the model is designed for evacuation and traffic modelling parameters. For this reasoning, and because the most commonly reported evacuation transport method during 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami survey was by vehicle (85% evacuated by vehicle), a vehicle evacuation mode was assigned for the model. Although the evacuation time and congestion estimates provide a degree of realism for representing a large proportion of the township evacuating by vehicle, pedestrian evacuation was also reported during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The evacuation model assumed households used only one vehicle to evacuate to safety. Although it is not clear that this was reported in the survey dataset (Appendix A), it is likely that a number of households may have used more than one vehicle to evacuate. This would depend on individual household composition. A number of survey respondents also stated they needed assistance to evacuate, therefore an assumption could be that not all households used a vehicle to evacuate.

As mentioned in Chapter 2, a limited number of studies have analysed pedestrian evacuation for at risk coastal communities in New Zealand (Fraser et al. 2016; Le. 2016). However, as evacuation modelling techniques improve, it would be beneficial to incorporate the empirical datasets from the field investigations presented in this thesis (Appendix B and D). Incorporating field investigations such as observations of New Zealand's national earthquake drill (ShakeOut) and tsunami hīkoi could refine evacuation modelling outputs, for all evacuation modelling methods, including ArcCASPER. Field investigation observations presented in Appendix B provide a framework for incorporating real-world evacuation time estimates (how long it took students to evacuate from classrooms to their safe zone destination) and allocating designated route paths. This would ultimately increase the realism of pedestrian evacuation modelling outputs, particularly for day-time evacuation scenarios. Appendix B summarises methods and observations from the 2018 Kaikōura High School ShakeOut. An additional field investigation to supplement the 2018 ShakeOut observations of Kaikōura High School (Appendix B), calculated average walking speeds for walking tracks along Kaikōura peninsula using GPS Tracking (Appendix D). Findings of these field investigations present informative dataset for potential future evacuation modelling and response planning.

## 4.4.3 Limitations and recommendations the evacuation modelling framework

The evacuation modelling framework applied in this thesis provided a useful application to incorporate real-world tsunami evacuation behaviour input parameters. Despite this, there are several limitations that could be improved upon in future work. These include;

## 1) Exposure data inventory

- Only usually resident populations were considered. Future research should consider transient populations and seasonal population variations.
- The population exposure data was based on NZ Statistics 2013 Census meshblock dataset. When available, future work should incorporate updated census data.
- Building-use categories were remotely sensed using satellite imagery and street-level observations (Google Earth, 2020). Future work should consider validating this asset dataset with field observations.

#### 2) ArcCASPER modelling approach

- Although CASPER has the ability to model optimal evacuation routes (shortest path) and estimate evacuation time for road segments and evacuees considering congestion potential, the tool has several limitations. One of these limitations is CASPER models congestion based on number of lanes to represent evacuee capacity critical density, saturation density per unit capacity, and the initial delay cost per evacuee (defined in section 4.2) which represent all roads the same way. In reality, congestion rate along certain road segments may vary depending on speed limits, and variation of household evacuation delay time. Future work should consider classifying individual road to improve the accuracy of estimated evacuation times.
- ArcCASPER does not have the capability to incorporate more than one mode of transportation per simulation so only vehicle evacuation was considered. Future work should consider additional evacuation modes of transportation in simulations.
- ArcCASPER tool only models people evacuating from their origin point to a safe location. The tool does not consider individual behaviours between origin and destination points that might increase or decrease evacuation estimates for that household (e.g. altering route to assist neighbours or family, or subsequent natural cues prompting an increase in evacuation speed). Future research should consider diverse evacuation speeds of the population.

## 3) Empirical evacuation behaviour data

- Only self-reported safe zone destinations were included in the network evacuation model.
   Unreported safe zone destinations were included however there are likely additional safe zone destinations within Kaikōura township.
- Although reduced speeds due to congestion are considered in the network evacuation model, other variation of vehicle evacuation speeds were not considered (e.g. exceeding the speed limit). Future work should consider incorporation the survey results on evacuation speed variation.
- The model does not incorporate real-world physical barriers causing congestion (e.g. a fallen lamp post, road damage, bridge collapse). Future models should incorporate congestion barriers (empirical or simulated)

## 4.5 Chapter summary

This chapter addressed Objective two of this thesis: Develop an evacuation modelling framework and test by modelling likely evacuation behaviours of coastal Kaikōura residents, to ensure that it is applicable to other communities at risk from tsunami in New Zealand and international. This chapter developed and provided an evacuation planning tool framework. It then presented and discussed results of an applied evacuation modelling method (ArcCASPER) for the Kaikōura township. The results presented in the form of maps, allow identifying the optimal evacuation routes as well as the unfeasible or less desirable evacuation routes. This information could be used to inform future tsunami risk management initiatives in Kaikōura.

The ArcCASPER tool was applied within the evacuation planning tool framework to estimate evacuation time of households and time and congestion along individual road segments within Kaikōura's road network. The key findings are;

- The estimated time for the entire resident population to evacuate to safety was 12:05 minutes.
- High vehicle density counts were estimated at the following locations;
  - o Churchill Street
  - Killarney Street (Post Office Cutting)
  - Scarborough Street
- High evacuation times were estimated for households located at;
  - South Bay

- o Avoca Street
- o North end of Beach Road

The following chapter summarises key findings of the evacuation behaviour and modelling framework presented in this thesis.

## Chapter 5: Summary and recommendations

## 5.1 Summary and conclusions

As outlined in Section 1.2, this Masters of Science thesis had two aims. The first aim was to develop an empirical evidence-base that provides a comprehensive understanding of human evacuation behaviours and dynamics of a local-source tsunami threat. The second aim was to improve current evacuation modelling methods through the input of real-event evacuation behaviour characteristics. This involved combing scientific and local knowledge across the three risk assessment phases of the Risk Management Framework (Section 1.3-4) to help inform national and global tsunami risk management and emergency response planning (risk treatment options).

The first aim of this thesis was addressed by using the Mw 7.8 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami (local-source) as a case study to assess the immediate reactions and evacuation behaviour dynamics of residents in the coastal town of Kaikōura during and following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The survey instrument used to collect self-reported evacuation response and dynamics in Chapter 3 was then used to address research aim two, by informing realistic rules and interactions for the development of a network-based vehicle evacuation model for the Kaikōura township (Chapter 4). Key findings and the methodological framework presented in this thesis contribute to the global knowledge on understanding immediate reactions and evacuation behaviours of a local source tsunami threat, and constitute real-word evidence to inform and improve evacuation modelling techniques. Findings could be used to help inform national and global tsunami evacuation preparedness and contribute to mitigating the number of casualties in future events through appropriate tsunami risk management and response initiatives. These findings are explained and discussed in more detail in the following sections.

5.1.1 Improving current understanding of immediate reactions and evacuation behaviours of a near-source tsunami threat (Chapter 3)

The tsunami generated by the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake provided a valuable opportunity to address a global tsunami research gap (outlined in Chapter 1), to assess a complete evacuation response of a near-source tsunami threat. A survey instrument was developed with disaster risk management practitioners, with a design focus on improving the understanding on of warning and evacuation decision-making, evacuation movements and associated dynamics, and risk awareness influence on evacuation response. A total of 1055 surveys were distributed in the Kaikōura township, with 131 returned (12.4% return rate). Key findings of survey results as reported in Chapter 3 include;

Prior to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, respondents had a 'good' (44%, n=55) or 'very good'
 (25%, n=31) level of knowledge on tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate.

- Of the total survey respondents (n=131), 69% evacuated.
- A large proportion (79%, n=88) of respondents who reported that they evacuated did so due to the potential tsunami threat during and immediately after the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake.
- The vast majority (95%, n=64) of those living in the tsunami evacuation zone at the time reported that they evacuated. Almost half (45%) of respondents who were residing outside tsunami evacuation zones (n=42) evacuated, with most reporting that they did so because of 'severe shaking and aftershocks'.
- Reported congestion barriers included bridge failures, fallen lamp post, and road damage due
  to subsidence caused by the earthquake. These barriers slowed down evacuation time of
  some residents, particularly along Churchill Street and Killarney Street, adding minutes to their
  total evacuation time.
- More than half (55%) of respondents evacuated prior to the first tsunami wave was recorded
  after the earthquake (within 10 minutes). Ninety percent had reported they evacuated by the
  time of which the tsunami highest point was measured on the Kaikōura sea level gauge 40
  minutes after the earthquake.
- The time at which respondents stayed at their evacuation point ranged from 30 minutes to 48 hours. The most common reported time respondents stayed at their evacuation point was 6 hours (18%).
- The three most commonly reported preparedness actions residents have made following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake include; prepared an emergency kit with essential items (57%, n=70), discussed an evacuation plan with friends and family or household members (54%, n=67) and prepared a go bag containing essential items (43%, n=53).

While this section presented the summary of the survey results, the next section (section1.2-2) presents key conclusions of the application of empirical data derived from this dataset to inform evacuation modelling outputs

# 5.1.2 Development of a network-based based vehicle evacuation model for Kaikōura township (chapter 4)

The empirical dataset from the survey instrument (Chapter 3) provided the opportunity to inform 'real event' evacuation rules and interactions (safe zone locations, travel mode and vehicle speed) to develop a realistic network-based vehicle evacuation model for the Kaikōura township (chapter 4). Under an 'ideal night-time' scenario, where households evacuate using one vehicle, the results of the ArcCASPER network model predicted the total evacuation time of 12:05 minutes for the entire township to reach safety. The results of the model poses a great risk to the Kaikōura community given

the townships close proximity to near source tsunami threats (Kaikōura Canyon and Hikurangi subduction zone). Evacuation time estimate of the entire township suggest most of Kaikōura residents will evacuate prior to the arrival of tsunami waves generated by a Hikurangi subduction zone earthquake, however the evacuation time of 12:05 minutes is a concern for the immediate risk of tsunami generated by a submarine landslide of earthquake along the Kaikōura Canyon which waves are predicted to reach the coast in a matter of minutes. In this case, modelling results of predicted evacuation times and potential congestion could be used to identify high risk areas for prioritisation of tsunami risk management initiatives. An example of this, where modelling results indicate greater evacuation time for households to reach safety include South Bay, along Avoca Street, and north end of Beach Road. The results of the network-based evacuation model can be used as an informative evacuation planning tool, particular to improve on tsunami risk management initiatives in Kaikōura such as identifying key locations for tsunami evacuation boards and signs and the development of a local level response plan.

Based on the summarised results above, the following section (1.2) provides key recommendations for applications and key recommendation for future work.

## 5.2 Key recommendations

This sections provides key recommendations applicable at both a local and national scale based on the conclusions drawn from the case study.

I. Implement additional tsunami risk management initiatives including public education and evacuation planning:

**Public education** is a key component of tsunami risk management. Public education aims to raise awareness on tsunami risk and knowledge on how to interpret natural and official warnings and appropriate protective actions to take during an emergency response.

## Applied – local, regional and National Civil Defence Emergency Management

- Continue efforts on raising public awareness through the application of community preparedness workshops, promotion of national public education awareness campaigns, and evacuation planning initiatives.
- Evacuation planning initiatives could include:
  - Implementation of tsunami information boards and evacuation signs in high risk areas vulnerable to local-source tsunami threat. Placement of signs and information boards should consider high residents and visitor population densities and potential congestion pinch-points.

- Encourage all schools, workplaces and households to participate in national and local level evacuation drills annually (ShakeOut). A recommendation would be to encourage local-level evacuation drills more frequently e.g. bi annually, to increase the level of awareness on correct protective actions and become more familiarised on planned evacuation routes.
- Implementation of blue lines to increase public's awareness on tsunami inundation extent of a worst-case scenario.
- Future policy and decision-making can be informed by the learnings of this thesis.
   Including, but not limited to; land-use planning and national guidance and technical standards on evacuation planning.
- II. Improve on research methodology (see future work in section 5.3)

## 5.3 Key recommendations for future work

Recommendations for future work include:

- 1) Conduct further evacuation modelling for Kaikōura and/or coastal communities at risk to local-source tsunami threat in New Zealand. The ArcCASPER evacuation modelling approach used in this thesis was a useful tool to determine evacuation time estimates and potential congestion for Kaikōura. However, whilst real-event empirical data was incorporated as key inputs for the evacuation model (safe zone locations, mode of transport and evacuation speed), to inform realistic evacuation time outputs and congestion potential, the tool lacked the ability to incorporate additional survey data that would represent the complexities of human behaviour during an evacuation event. Recommendations for future work include:
  - I. Model evacuation time and congestion potential outputs using other common evacuation modelling approaches. This could include agent-based modelling and/or least cost distance modelling. The outputs of these models could be used to test and compare evacuation modelling results of the Network-based evacuation model.
  - II. Agent-based modelling is well recognised and an increasingly applied evacuation method for its ability to incorporate multiple characteristics of human evacuation behaviour. It is recommended to apply this modelling approach to represent vehicle and pedestrian evacuation.
  - III. Model various spatio-temporal evacuation scenarios to represent population distribution across the time of day, month and seasons. This should incorporate transient population fluctuations to represent more realistic scenarios.

- IV. Additional research should incorporate field investigation results of average walking speeds and evacuation response behaviour of local and national evacuation drills
- 2) Conduct further evacuation behaviour research for other communities at risk to local source tsunami globally and in New Zealand. The evacuation behaviour and modelling framework presented in this thesis provides an approach to assess immediate evacuation response to a local-source tsunami threat. This framework can be applied and improved in the future by:
  - Conducting evacuation behavioural research, using the survey instrument to assess complete evacuation responses following national and international tsunami evacuation events.
  - II. Coordinate a science and practioners network to conduct consistent data collection and research following future tsunami evacuation response events.
  - III. Refine survey instrument by including subsequent questions addressing participant experiences with emergency mobile alerts, prior to and during evacuation events.
  - IV. Analyse the long term (days years) population effects in Kaikoura District following 2016
     Kaikoura earthquake event.

# References

- Alabdouli, K. (2015). Tsunami evacuation: Using GIS to integrate behavioural and vulnerability data with transportation modeling. Florida State University, America.
- Arce, R. S. C., Onuki, M., Esteban, M., & Shibayama, T. (2017). Risk awareness and intended tsunami evacuation behaviour of international tourists in kamakura city, japan. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 23, 178-192. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2017.04.005
- Arcos, N., dunbar, P., Stroker, K., Kong, L. (2019). The impact of Post-tsunami surveys on the NCEI/WDS Global Historical Tsunami Database. Pure and Applied Geophysics, 176, pp. 2809-2829. doi: 10.1007/s11069-017-3152-4
- Baker, E. J. (1991). Hurricane evacuation behaviour. International Journal of Mass Emergencies and Disasters, 9 (2), 287-310.
- Barnhill, D. (2020). Tsunami evacuation dynamics following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake in Christchurch and Banks Peninsula, New Zealand, to inform tsunami evacuation modelling for Banks Peninsula [Unpublished Master's thesis, University of Canterbury].
- Berryman, K. (2005). Review of tsunami hazard and risk in New Zealand (GNS Science Client Report 2005/104). Retrieved from http://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/publications/GNS-CR2005 104-review-of-tsunami-hazard.pdf
- Bird, D. K., Chagué-Goff, C., & Gero, A. (2011). Human response to extreme events: A review of three post-tsunami disaster case studies. Australian Geographer, 42(3), 225-239. doi:10.1080/00049182.2011.595670
- Blake, D., Johnston, D., Leonard, G., McLaren, L., & Becker, J. (2018). A citizen science initiative to understand community response to the Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami warning in Petone and Eastbourne, Wellington, Aotearoa/New Zealand. Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America, 108(3B), 1807-1817. doi:10.1785/0120170292
- Borrero, J., & Lane, E. (2018). Shaky Shores: Coastal impacts & responses to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquakes. Retrieved from https://www.coastalsociety.org.nz/assets/Publications/Special-Issues/NZCS-SI-3-Kaikōura .pdf
- Cabinet Office (2010). Fire, and Disaster Management Agency Chile chubu engan wo shingen to suru zishi ni yoru tsunami hinan ni kansuru kinkyuu anke-to chousa
- Cabinet Office in Japan (2012). Higahinihondaishinsai ni okeru jishin tsunami ji no hinan ni kannsuru jittai chousa.
- Centre for Research on the Epidemilogy of Disasters (CRED) & United Nations Office for Disaster Risk Reduction. (2018). Economic losses, poverty, & disasters; 1998-2017. Retrieved from: https://www.preventionweb.net/files/61119\_credeconomiclosses.pdf
- Couling, M. (2014). Tsunami risk perception and preparedness on the east coast of New Zealand during the 2009 Samoan tsunami warning. Natural Hazards, 71(1), 973-986. doi:10.1007/s11069-013-0945-y

- Cradock-Henry, N. & Fountain, J. (2018). Transformations for Resilient Futures: The case of Kaikōura, Aoteraroa-New Zealand. Sustainability, 10(6). doi: 10.3390/su10061952
- Currie, C., Enjamio, J., Girardo, D. O., Hensel, C., Johnston, D. M., & Leonard, G. (2014). Tsunami awareness and preparedness in the greater wellington region. Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Dash, N., & Gladwin, H. (2007). Evacuation decision making and behavioural responses: Individual and household. *Natural Hazards Review*, *8*(3), 69–77.
- Dengler, L. (2005). The role of education in the national tsunami hazard mitigation program. Natural Hazards, 35(1), 141-153. doi:10.1007/s11069-004-2409-x
- De Lange, W. P., & Healy, T. R. (1986). New Zealand tsunamis 1840-1982. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics*, 29(1), 115-134. Doi:10.1080/00288306.1986.10427527
- Dhellemmes, A., Leonard, G., & Johnston, D. (2016). Tsunami awareness and preparedness on the East Coast of New Zealand's North Island (GNS Science Report 2016/20. 65 p). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Dillman, D. A., Smyth, J. D., & Christian, L. M. (2014). *Internet, phone, mail, and mixed-mode surveys:* the tailored design method. John Wiley & Sons.
- Downes, G., Barberopoulou, A., Cochran, U., Clark, K., & Scheele, F. (2017). The New Zealand tsunami database: Historical and modern records. Seismological Research Letters, 88(2A), 342-353. doi:10.1785/0220160135
- Dudley, W. C., Whitney, R., Faasisila, J., Fonolua, S., Jowitt, A., & Chan-Kau, M. (2011). Learning from the victims: new physical and social science information about tsunamis from victims of the September 29, 2009 event in Samoa and American Samoa. *Earth-science reviews*, *107*(1-2), 201-206.
- Dzialek J. (2013). Perception of Natural Hazards and Disasters. In: Bobrowsky P.T. (eds) Encyclopedia of Natural Hazards. Encyclopedia of Earth Sciences Series. Springer, Dordrecht
- East Coast Lab (2020). Hikurangi subduction zone Response Planning Toolbox. Retrieved from: https://www.eastcoastlab.org.nz/assets/Reports/HRPlanning-Toolbox.pdf
- East Coast Lab. (n.d). Hikurangi Subduction Earthquakes & Slip Behaviour. Retrieved from: https://www.eastcoastlab.org.nz/our-science/our-projects/hikurangi-subduction-earthquakes-and-slip-behavior-research-project/
- Environment Canterbury. (2020). Canterbury Tsunami Evacuation Zones. Retrieved from https://ecan.maps.arcgis.com/apps/Minimalist/index.html?appid=591062afb6b542abb247cc8d 15a64855
- Evans (2020). Tsunami exposure assessment of population, building and critical infrastructure informing a vehicular evacuation model for Riversdale Beach in Wairarapa, New Zealand. [Unpublished dissertation, University of Canterbury].
- Facebook. (2019). Kaikōura Notice Board.

- Fountain, J. & Cradock-Henry, N. (2019). "Chapter 3 The road to recovery reimagining Kaikōura after a natural disaster" In: Walters, G. & Mair, J. (ed). Oxford: Good fellow Publishers http://dx.doi.org/10.23912/9781911396673-4123
- Fraser, S. A., Doyle, E. E. H., Wright, K. C., Potter, S. H., McClure, J., Johnston, D. M., Leonard, G. S., Coomer, M. A., Becker, J, S., & Johal, S. (2016). Tsunami response behaviour during and following two local-source earthquakes in Wellington, New Zealand. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 16, 123-133. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2016.02.008
- Fraser, S. (2014). Informing the development of tsunami vertical evacuation strategies in New Zealand. PhD Thesis, Massey University.
- Fraser, S. A., Power, W. L., Wang, X., Wallace, L. M., Mueller, C., & Johnston, D. M. (2014). Tsunami inundation in Napier, New Zealand, due to local earthquake sources. *Natural hazards*, *70*(1), 415-445.
- Fraser, S. A., Wood, N. J., Johnston, D. M., Leonard, G. S., Greening, P. D., & Rossetto, T. (2014b). Variable population exposure and distributed travel speeds in least-cost tsunami evacuation modelling. *Natural Hazards and Earth System Science*, *14*(11), 2975–2991.
- Fraser, S. A., Leonard, G. S., & Johnston, D. M. (2013). *Intended evacuation behaviour in a local earthquake and tsunami at Napier, New Zealand* (GNS Science Report 2013/26. 55 p). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Fraser, S. A., Leonard, G. S., & Johnston, D. M. (2013). Intended evacuation behaviour in a local earthquake and tsunami at Napier, New Zealand (GNS Science Report 2013/26. 55 p). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Gaillard, J. C., Clavé, E., Vibert, O., Denain, J. C., Efendi, Y., Grancher, D., ... & Setiawan, R. (2008). Ethnic groups' response to the 26 December 2004 earthquake and tsunami in Aceh, Indonesia. *Natural Hazards*, *47*(1), 17-38.
- Geonet. (n.d.a). M 7.8 Kaikōura Mon, Nov 14 2016. Retrieved from https://www.geonet.org.nz/earthquake/2016p858000
- GFDRR (2014) Understanding risk in an evolving world: emerging best practices in natural disaster risk assessment. Global Facility for Disaster Reduction and Recovery, The World Bank, Washington. https://www.gfdrr.org/sites/gfdrr/files/publication/Understanding\_Risk-Web\_Version-rev\_1.8.0.pdf, Accessed 23 September 2016.
- Giovinazzi, S., Austin, A., Ruiter, R., Foster, C., Nayyerloo, M., Nair, N., & Wotherspoon, L. (2017).

  Resilience and fragility of the telecommunication network to seismic events: Evidence after ther Kaikōura (New Zealand) earthquake. Bulletin of the New Zealand Society for Earthquake Engineering, 50(2): 318-328
- GNS Science, 2014. New Zealand Tsunami Database. Unpublished data
- González-Riancho, P., Aguirre-Ayerbe, I., Aniel-Quiroga, I., Abad, S., González, M., Larreynaga, J., Gavidia, F., Gutiérrez, O. Q., Álvarez-Gómez, J. A., & Medina, R. (2013). Tsunami evacuation modelling as a tool for risk reduction: application to the coastal area of El Salvador. Natural Hazards, 13, 3249–3270
- Goto, Y., Mikami, T., & Nakabayashi, I. (2012, March). Fact-finding about the evacuation from the unexpectedly large tsunami of March 11, 2011 in East Japan. In *Proc. of* (Vol. 15).

- Google Earth. (2020). Imagery: <a href="https://www.google.com/earth/">https://www.google.com/earth/</a>
- Grehl, N. & Dengler, L. (2008). Using GIS to model tsunami evacuation time estimates for the community of Fairhaven, California. Humboldt State University.
- Gregg, C. E., Houghton, B. F., Paton, D., Johnston, D. M., Swanson, D. A., & Yanagi, B. S. (2007). Tsunami warnings: Understanding in Hawai'i. Natural Hazards, 40(1), 71. doi:10.1007/s11069-006-0005-y
- Gregg, C. E., Houghton, B. F., Paton, D., Lachman, R., Lachman, J., Johnston, D. M., & Wongbusarakum, S. (2006). Natural Warning Signs of Tsunamis: Human Sensory Experience and Response to the 2004 Great Sumatra Earthquake and Tsunami in Thailand. *Earthquake Spectra*, 22(3\_suppl), 671–691. https://doi.org/10.1193/1.2206791
- Harnantyari, A. S., Takabatake, T., Esteban, M., Valenzuela, P., Nishida, Y., Shibayama, T., Achiari, H., Rusli., Marzuki, A. G., Marzuki, M. F. H., Aránguiz, R., & Kyaw, T. O. (2020). Tsunami awareness and evacuation behaviour during the 2018 sulawesi earthquake tsunami. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 43, 101389. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2019.101389
- Hamling, J., Hreinsdottir, S., Clark, K., Elliot, J., Laian, C., Fielding, E., Litchfield, N....Stirling, M. \*2018). Complex multifault rupture during the 2016 Mw 7.8 Kaikōura earthqauke, New Zealand. Science. 10.1126/science.aam7194.
- Hasan, S., Ukkusuri, S., Gladwin, H., & Murray-Tuite, P. (2011). Behavioral model to understand household-level hurricane evacuation decision making. Journal of Transportation Engineering, 137(5), 341-348. doi:10.1061/(ASCE)TE.1943-5436.0000223
- Hendtlass, C., Borrero, J., Neale, D., and Shand, T. (eds) (2018). *Shaky Shores* Coastal impacts & responses to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquakes. *New Zealand Coastal Society*.
- Hiroi Osamu, Nakamura Isao, Fukuda Mitsuru, Nakamori Hiromichi, Sekiya Naoya, Mikami Shuuji, et al. (2005) Evacuation activities at the tokachi-oki earthquake, 2003. Technical report The Interfaculty Initiative in Information Studies.
- Ikeda, M., Asai, K., Murakami, H., Takahashi, M., & Arikawa, T. (2017). Study on evacuation behavior of iquique residents for iquique earthquake occurred in 2014. *J. Japan Soc. Civ. Eng. Ser. F6* (Safety Problem), 73(1), 92-101.
- Imamura, F., Boret, S., Suppasri, A., Muhari, A. (2019). Recent occurrences of serious tsunami damage and the future challenges of tsunami disaster risk reduction. Progress in Disaster Science, (1). doi: 10.1016/j.pdisas.2019.100009
- International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies (IFRC) (2014). New Zealand Case Study: How law and regulation support disaster risk reduction. Country Case Study Report. Retrieved from https://reliefweb.int/sites/reliefweb.int/files/resources/New%20Zealand\_2014\_IFRC\_Law-DRR-Case-Study.pdf
- Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO (2011). Reducing and managing the risk of tsunamis. IOC (Manuals and Guides,57).

- Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO (2020). Preparing for community tsunami evacuations: from inundation to evacuation maps, response plans and exercises. Paris, UNESCO (Manuals and Guides, 82).
- International Tsunami Inforamtion Centre. Global and Regional Hazard Maps. Retreived from: http://itic.iocunesco.org/images/stories/awareness\_and\_education/map\_posters/2017\_tsu\_poster 20180313 a2 low res.pdf
- Institute of Socio-Information and the University of Tokyo Communication Studies (1994). 1993-nen hokkaido nansei-oki zishin ni okeru zyuumin no taiou to saigaizyouhou no dentatsu kyodaitsunami to hinannkoudou
- Jack, H., & Schoenfeld, M., (2017). Developing tsunami evacuation zones for Christchurch City and Banks Peninsula. Christchurch, New Zealand: Environment Canterbury Regional Council
- Johnston, D., Becker, J., McClure, J., Paton, D., McBride, S., Wright, K., Leonard, G., & Hughes, M. (2013). Community understanding of, and preparedness for, earthquake and tsunami risk in wellington, New Zealand. In H. Joffe, T. Rossetto & J. Adams (Eds.), Cities at risk (pp. 131-148). doi:10.1007/978-94-007-6184-1\_8
- Johnston, D., Pettersson, R., Downes, G., Paton, D., Leonard, G., Pishief, K., & Bell, R. (2008).

  Developing an effective tsunami warning system: Lessons from the 1960 Chile earthquake tsunami for New Zealand coastal communities. *Kotuitui: New Zealand Journal of Social Sciences Online*, *3*(2), 105-120. doi:10.1080/1177083X.2008.9522436
- Johnston, D., Leonard, G., Bell, R., Stewart, C., Hickman, M., Thompson, J., Kerr, J., and Glassey, P. (2003) Tabulated results of the 2003 national coastal community survey (GNS Science Report 2003/35 121 p.). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science
- Jumadi, J., Heppenstall, A., Malleson, N., Carver, S., Quincey, D., & Manville, V. (2018). Modelling individual evacuation decisions during natural disasters: A case study of volcanic crisis in Merapi, Indonesia. *Geosciences*, 8(6).
- Kaikōura District Council (2020). Getting Ready for an Emergency. Retrieved from: https://www.Kaikōura.govt.nz/our-district/civil-defence/
- Kaikōura Star (2019). (http://readnow.isentia.com/ReadNow.aspx?EEhvNRy2Aa9X&fbclid=IwAR3rHrCmq6J0HpScZtAx rQJX3BfveopAPHsj3f7mapIKYJa99NNpwGKaZio
- Katada, T., & Kanai, M. (2016). The school education to improve the disaster response capacity: A case of "Kamaishi Miracle". *Journal of disaster research*, *11*(5), 845-856
- Kato Fuminori, Suwa Yoshio, Hayashi Haruo. (2009). Decision making on evacuation from tsunami of the earthquake off Chishima Islands in 2006. Proc Hydraul Eng. 2(53), 865–70
- Kardos, A. (2017). Review of the tsunami evacuation in Christchurch City on 14 November 2016. Retrieved from http://www.ccc.govt.nz/assets/Documents/Services/Civil-Defence/Review-of-the-Tsunami-Evacuation-2017.pdf
- King, D. N. (2015). Tsunami hazard, assessment and risk in Aotearoa–New Zealand: A systematic review AD 1868–2012. *Earth-Science Reviews*, *145*, 25-42. doi: 10.1016/j.earscirev.2015.02.004

- King, D. N. T., Goff, J., & Skipper, A. (2007). Māori environmental knowledge and natural hazards in Aotearoa-New Zealand. *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand, 37*(2), 59-73. doi:10.1080/03014220709510536
- Knook, P., Hansen, R., Shand, T., Russ, N., Reinen-Hamill, R., Baunton, P., Conning, R., Nicholson, C. (2015). Tsunami evacuation modelling and mitigation measures for Tauranga City, New Zealand. *Australasian Coasts & Ports Conference 2015 15-18 September 2015, Auckland, New Zealand.*
- Koordinates (n.d). Retrieved from: https://koordinates.com/
- Kubisch, S., Guth, J., Keller, S., Bull, M. T., Keller, L., & Braun, A. C. (2020). The contribution of tsunami evacuation analysis to evacuation planning in chile: Applying a multi-perspective research design. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 45, 101462. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2019.101462
- Kubisch, S., Stötzer, J., Keller, S., Bull, M. T., & Braun, A. (2019). Combining a social science approach and GIS-based simulation to analyse evacuation in natural disasters: A case study in the Chilean community of Talcahuano. In 16th ISCRAM Conference, edited by F. Zeno, JJ González, and JH Canós (pp. 497-515).
- Lane, E. M., Borrero, J., Whittaker, C. N., Bind, J., Chagué-Goff, C., Goff, J., Goring, D., Hoyle, J., Mueller, C., Power, W. L., Reid, C. M., Williams, J. H., & Williams, S. P. (2017). Effects of inundation by the 14th november, 2016 kaikōura tsunami on banks peninsula, canterbury, new zealand. Pure and Applied Geophysics, 174(5), 1855-1874. doi:10.1007/s00024-017-1534-x
- Lane, E., Kohout, A., Chiaverini, A., & Arnold, J. (2014). Updated inundation modelling in Canterbury from a South American tsunami. Retrieved from https://www.ecan.govt.nz/data/document-library/
- Le, L. (2016). Tsunami evacuation model for Sumner, Christchurch, New Zealand. University of Canterbury
- Leonard, G. (compiler). (2008). *Draft guidelines for consistent New Zealand tsunami evacuation mapping* (GNS Science Report SR2008/30, 18p). GNS Science, Lower Hutt, Wellington, New Zealand.
- LGNZ. (2014). Managing natural hazards risk in New Zealand's towards more resilient communities: A think piece for local and central government and others with a role in managing hazards. Reterieved from: https://www.lgnz.co.nz/assets/Publications/de504aaea2/Managing-natural-hazards-LGNZ-think-piece.pdf
- Lindell, M. K., Prater, C. S., Gregg, C. E., Apatu, E. J. I., Huang, S., & Wu, H. C. (2015). Households' immediate responses to the 2009 American Samoa earthquake and tsunami. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 12, 328-340. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2015.03.003
- Lindell, M. (2013). Risk perception and communication. In: Bobrowsky P.T. (eds) Encyclopedia of Natural Hazards. Encyclopedia of Earth Sciences Series. Springer, Dordrecht
- Lindell, M. K., Kang, J. E., & Prater, C. S. (2011). The logistics of household hurricane evacuation. Natural Hazards, 58(3), 1093-1109. doi:10.1007/s11069-011-9715-x
- Lindell, M. K., & Perry, R. W. (1992). *Behavioral foundations of community emergency planning*. Hemisphere Publishing Corp.

- LINZ. (2020a). NZ building outlines [GIS Shapefile]. Retrieved from https://data.linz.govt.nz/layer/101290-nz-building-outlines/
- LINZ. (2020b). NZ roads: road section geometry [GIS Shapefile]. Retrieved from https://data.linz.govt.nz/layer/53378-nz-roads-road-section-geometry/
- Lonergan, C., Hedley, N., & Clague, J. J. (2015). A visibility-based assessment of tsunami evacuation signs in seaside, oregon. Natural Hazards, 78(1), 41-59. doi:10.1007/s11069-015-1696-8
- Løvholt, F., Setiadi, N. J., Birkmann, J., Harbitz, C. B., Bach, C., Fernando, N., Kaiser, G., & Nadim, F. (2014). Tsunami risk reduction are we better prepared today than in 2004? *International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction*, 10, 127-142. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2014.07.008
- Lukovic, B., Heron, D., Wang, X., Power, W. (2017). Evacuation time estimates for local source tsunami for Wellington Suburbs. GNS Science Report [2017/05].
- NPO CeMI (2011). Northeastern Pacific Ocean off the coast earthquake: Preliminary analysis of questionnaire survey on tsunami Tokyo, Japan (p.22).
- Maghelal, P., Li, X., & Peacock, W. (2017). Highway congestion during evacuation: Examining the household's choice of number of vehicles to evacuate. Natural Hazards, 87(3), 1399-1411. doi:10.1007/s11069-017-2823-5
- Makinoshima, F., Imamura, F., & Oishi, Y. (2020). Tsunami evacuation process based on human behaviour in past earthquakes and tsunamis: A literature review. Progress in Disaster Science, 100113. doi:10.1016/j.pdisas.2020.100113
- Makinoshima, F., Imamura, F., & Abe, Y. (2016). Behavior from tsunami recorded in the multimedia sources at kesennuma city in the 2011 tohoku tsunami and its simulation by using the evacuation model with pedestrian-car interaction. Coastal Engineering Journal: Special Issue on the 5th Anniversary of the 2011 Tohoku Earthquake Tsunami-its Lessons Toward Future Tsunami Disaster
- Mas, E., Koshimura, S., Imamura, F., Suppasri, A., Muhari, A., & Adriano, B. (2015). Recent advances in agent-based tsunami evacuation simulations: Case studies in Indonesia, Thailand, Japan and Peru. Pure and Applied Geophysics, 172(12), 3409-3424. doi:10.1007/s00024-015-1105-y
- McAdoo, B. G., Dengler, L., Prasetya, G., & Titov, V. (2006). Smong: How an oral history saved thousands on Indonesia's Simeulue Island during the December 2004 and March 2005 tsunamis. Earthquake Spectra, 22(3), 661-669.
- MBIE (2020). Tsunami Loads and Effects on Vertical Evacuation Structures: Technical Information. Retrieved from: https://www.building.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/building-code-compliance/geotechnical-education/tsunami-vertical-evacuation-structures.pdf
- McBride, S., Becker, J., Johnston, D. (2019). Exploring the barriers for people taking protective actions during the 2012 and 2015 New Zealand ShakeOut drills. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 37 https://doi.org/ 10.1016/j.ijdrr.2019.101150.
- MCDEM. (2019). National disaster resilience strategy. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/plans-and-strategies/national-disaster-resilience-strategy/

- MCDEM. (2018a). Tsunami advisory and warning plan; Supporting plan [SP 01/18]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/cdem-framework/guidelines/
- MCDEM. (2018b). Assessment and planning for tsunami vertical evacuation; Directors guideline [DGL 21/18]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/DGL-21-18-Assessment-and-Planning-for-Tsunami-Vertical-Evacuation.pdf
- MCDEM. (2017a). The guide to the national CDEM plan 2015. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/guide-to-the-national-cdem-plan/Guide-to-the-National-CDEM-Plan-2015.pdf
- MCDEM. (2017b). Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami post event report (14 November 2016).

  Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/resources/news-and-events/news/Kaikōura-earthquake-and-tsunami-14-november-2016-post-event-report-mcdem-response/
- MCDEM. (2016). Tsunami evacuation zones; Directors guideline [DGL 08/16]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/cdem-framework/guidelines/
- MCDEM. (2014). Tsunami warning sirens; technical standard [TS03/14]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/cdem-framework/guidelines/
- MCDEM. (2008a). National Tsunami Signage; Technical Standard [TS01/08]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/publications/ts-01-08-national-tsunami-signage.pdf
- MCDEM. (2008). Mass Evacuation Planning. Directors Guideline for Civil Defence Emergency Management Groups [DGL 07/08]. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/the-4rs/readiness-and-response/evacuation-planning-and-management/#:~:text=The%20Mass%20Evacuation%20Planning%20Guideline%20has%20been %20prepared%20in%20to,be%20affected%20by%20hazardous%20events
- MCDEM. (n.d). Long and strong, get gone. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/public-education/tsunami-public-education/tsunami-fact-sheet.pdf
- Murakami, H., Takimoto, K., & Pomonis, A. (2012). Tsunami evacuation process and human loss distribution in the 2011 Great East Japan Earthquake-A case study of Natori city, Miyagi prefecture. In 15th World Conference on Earthquake Engineering (pp. 1-10).
- NEMA. (n.d). National Civil Defence Emergency Management Strategy. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/publications/national-CDEM-strategy-2008.pdf
- NEMA. (n.d.a). The 4 Rs. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/the-4rs/
- NEMA. (n.d.b). New Zealand Tsunami Risk Management Programme. Retrieved internally.
- NEMA. (n.d.c). New Zealand ShakeOut. Accessed on: 25/08/2020. Retrieved from:https://getready.govt.nz/involved/shakeout/
- New Zealand Government. (2019). Dart Buoys Announcement. Retrieved from: https://www.beehive.govt.nz/speech/dart-buoys-announcement

- New Zealand Lifelines Council (2017). New Zealand Lifelines Infrastructure Vulnerability Assessment: Stage 1. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/lifelines/National-Vulnerability-Assessment-Stage-1-September-2017.pdf
- NIWA (2015). Hikurangi Subduction Zone and Wairarapa Fault tsunami modelling for the Canterbury coast. Environment Canterbury Client Report (R15/130).
- NIWA (2004). Kaikōura District Engineering Lifelines Project: tsunami hazard assessment (Part1B). Environment Canterbury Client Report (U04/11).
- Mas, E., Koshimura, S., Imamura, F., Suppasri, A., Muhari, A., & Adriano, B. (2015). Recent advances in agent-based tsunami evacuation simulations: Case studies in indonesia, thailand, japan and peru. Pure and Applied Geophysics, 172(12), 3409-3424. doi:10.1007/s00024-015-1105-y
- Mas, E., Suppasri, A., Imamura, F., & Koshimura, S. (2012). Agent-based simulation of the 2011 great east japan earthquake/tsunami evacuation: An integrated model of tsunami inundation and evacuation. Journal of Natural Disaster Science, 34(1), 41-57.
- Mueller, C., Wang, X., Power, W.L., Lukovic, B. (2019). Multiple scenario tsunami modelling for Canterbury (GNS Science consultancy report; 2018/198). GNS Science, Lower Hutt, New Zealand.
- Murakami, H., Takimoto, K., & Pomonis, A. (2012). Tsunami evacuation process and human loss distribution in the 2011 Great East Japan Earthquake-A case study of Natori city, Miyagi prefecture. In *15th World Conference on Earthquake Engineering* (pp. 1-10).New Zealand Lifelines Council (2017).
- New Zealand Lifelines Infrastructure Vulnerability Assessment: Stage 1. Retrieved from: https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/assets/Uploads/lifelines/National-Vulnerability-Assessment-Stage-1-September-2017.pdf
- Okumura, Y., Harada, K., & Kawata, Y. (2010). Field Survey of Evacuation Behavior in the 29 September 2009 American Samoa Tsunami Disaster. *Journal of Japan Society of Civil Engineers, Ser. B2 (Coastal Engineering), 66*(1), 1371-1375.
- Perry, S.D. (2007). Tsunami Warning Dissemination in Mauritius, Journal of Applied Communication Research, 35:4, 399-417, DOI: <u>10.1080/00909880701611060</u>
- Potter, S. H., Kreft, P. V., Milojev, P., Noble, C., Montz, B., Dhellemmes, A., Woods, R, J., Gauden-Ing, S. (2018). The influence of impact-based severe weather warnings on risk perceptions and intended protective actions. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2018.03.031
- Power, W. (2013). Review of tsunami hazard in New Zealand (2013 Update) (GNS Science Consultancy Report 2013/131. 222 p). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Power, W, L., Boersen, K., Thomas, K-L., Tilley, L., Hudson Doyle, E, E., Kaiser, L, H., Heron, D, W., Wilson, T, M., Leonard, G, S. & Johnston, D, M. (2019). Quicker and safer tsunami evacuations through agent-based modelling (GNS Science Miscellaneous Series 134. 59p). Lower Hutt, New Zealand: GNS Science.
- Power, W., Clark, K., King, D., Borrero, J., Howarth, J., Lane, E., Goring, D., Goff, J., Chagué-Goff, C., Williams, J., Reid, C., Whittaker, C., Mueller, C., Williams, S., Hughes, M., Hoyle, J., Bind, J., Strong, D., Litchfield, N., Benson, A. (2017). 'Tsunami runup observations from the 14 November

- 2016 M7.8 Kaikōura earthquake, New Zealand. *Pure and Applied Geophysics,* 174(7), pp 2457-2473
- Power, W., & Leonard, G. (2013). Tsunami. In: Bobrowsky P.T. (eds) Encyclopedia of Natural Hazards. Encyclopedia of Earth Sciences Series. Springer, Dordrecht
- Qualtrics, 2019. Provo, Utah, USA, Retrieved from: https://canterbury.qualtrics.com/login?path=%2FControlPanel%2F&product=ControlPanel. Survey link: https://bit.ly/2FLSozu
- Schoenfeld, M. (2018). Shaky shores: Coastal impacts & responses to the 2016 Kaikōura earthquakes. Retrieved from: https://www.coastalsociety.org.nz/assets/Publications/Special-Issues/NZCS-SI-3-Kaikōura.pdf
- Shahabi, K., & Wilson, J. P. (2018). Scalable evacuation routing in a dynamic environment. Computers, Environment and Urban Systems, 67, 29-40. doi:10.1016/j.compenvurbsys.2017.08.011
- Shahabi, K., & Wilson, J. P. (2014). CASPER: Intelligent capacity-aware evacuation routing. Computers, Environment and Urban Systems, 46, 12-24. doi:10.1016/j.compenvurbsys.2014.03.004
- Shahabi, K. (2012). Out of harm's way: Enabling intelligent location-based evacuation routing. Retrieved from: http://www.esri.com/news/arcuser/0612/files/arcasper.pdf
- Simmons, D. G., Wilson, J., Doscher, C., & Hutchinson, A. (2017). Kaikōura: tourist travel behaviour and recovery framework. New Zealand: Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment. Retrieved from http://www.mbie.govt.nz/info-services/sectors-industries/tourism/tourism-research-data/other-research-and-reports/pdf-and-document-library/Kaikōura%20Tourist%20travel%20behaviour%20and%20recovery%20framework.pdf
- Standards Australia/Standards New Zealand. (2009). Risk management principles and guidelines.
- Statistics New Zealand, (2020). Population by meshblock 2013. Retrieved from: https://datafinder.stats.govt.nz/layer/8437-population-by-meshblock-2013-census/
- Statistics New Zealand. (2018a). Kaikōura: Population and dwelling. Retrieved from: https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/Kaikōura
- Statistics New Zealand. (2018b). Kaikōura recovery by the numbers. Retrieved from: https://www.stats.govt.nz/reports/Kaikōura-recovery-by-the-numbers
- Statistics NZ. (2006). Are New Zealanders living closer to the coast? Retrieved from: http://archive.stats.govt.nz/browse\_for\_stats/population/Migration/internal-migration/are-nzs-living-closer-to-coast.aspx
- Suppasri, A., Latcharote, P., Bricker, J. D., Leelawat, N., Hayashi, A., Yamashita, K., ... & Imamura, F. (2016). Improvement of tsunami countermeasures based on lessons from The 2011 Great East Japan Earthquake and Tsunami—situation after five years. Coastal Engineering Journal, 58(4), 1640011-1.

- Sun, Y., Nakai, F., Yamori, K., & Hatayama, M. (2017). Tsunami evacuation behavior of coastal residents in Kochi Prefecture during the 2014 Iyonada Earthquake. Natural hazards, 85(1), 283-299.
- Thomas, K. (2017). Kaikōura Earthquake and Tsunami Evacuation of Sumner. Unpublished manuscript.
- Thompson, R., Garfin, D., & Silver, R. (2017). Evacuation from natural disasters: a systematic review of the literature. Risk analysis, 37(4), 812-839
- Tilley, L. (2018). Tsunami exposure assessment and vehicular evacuation model for New Brighton, South New Brighton, and Southshore, Christchurch, New Zealand [Unpublished dissertation, University of Canterbury].
- Togawa, N., Sato, S., & Imamura, F. (2018). Comparative Analysis of Mobile Space Statistics Data and Questionnaire Survey Data to Detect Tsunami Evacuation Behavior: Case of Fukushima Earthquake Tsunami in Ishinomaki City and Watari Town, Miyagi Prefecture. Journal of Disaster Research, 13(2), 358-366.
- Toledo, T., Marom, I., Grimberg, E., & Bekhor, S. (2018). Analysis of evacuation behavior in a wildfire event. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 31, 1366-1373. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2018.03.033
- United Nations (2017). Factsheet: People and Oceans. The Ocean Conference, United nations, New York (5-9 June, 2017). Retrieved from; https://www.un.org/sustainabledevelopment/wp-content/uploads/2017/05/Ocean-fact-sheet-package.pdf
- UNISDR. (2017). UNISDR Terminology on Disaster Risk Reduction. Retrieved from https://www.unisdr.org/files/7817\_UNISDRTerminologyEnglish.pdf
- UNDP (2010) Disaster risk assessment. Bureau for Crisis Prevention and Recovery, United Nations Development Programme, New York, USA.

  www.undp.org/cpr/we\_do/disaster\_global\_risk\_id.shtml
- UNISDR (2009) UNISDR terminology on disaster risk reduction. United Nations International Strategy for Disaster Reduction, Geneva, Switzerland.
- UNISDR (2015) Sendai Framework for Disaster Risk Reduction (2015-2030). United Nations International Strategy for Disaster Reduction, Geneva, Switzerland.
- Ushiyama, M., & Imamura, F. (2004). Disaster information and residents at the earthquake in Iwate and Miyagi prefectures on May 23, 2003. Tsunami Engineering. Technical Report. 2004, 21, 57–82.(In Japanese).
- Vinnell, L., Wallis, A., Becker, J. (2020). Evacuating ShakeOut drill in Aotearoa/ New Zealand: Effects on knowledge, attitudes, and behaviour. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 48, doi: 10.1016/j.ijdrr.2020.101721
- Walters, R.A., Barnes, P., Goff, J.R. (2006a). Locally generated tsunami along the Kaikōura coastal margin: Part 1: Fault ruptures. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, 40(1), 1-16.

- Walters, R.A., Barnes, P., Lewis K., Goff, J.R. (2006b). Locally generated tsunami along the Kaikōura coastal margin: Part 2: Submarine landslides. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, 40(1), 17-28.
- Wang, H., Mostafizi, A., Cramer, L. A., Cox, D., & Park, H. (2016). An agent-based model of a multimodal near-field tsunami evacuation: Decision-making and life safety. Transportation Research Part C: Emerging Technologies, 64, 86-100.
- Williams, J. H., Wilson, T. M., Horspool, N., Paulik, R., Wotherspoon, L., Lane, E. M., & Hughes, M. W. (2020). Assessing transportation vulnerability to tsunamis: utilising post-event field data from the 2011 Tōhoku tsunami, Japan, and the 2015 Illapel tsunami, Chile.
- WREMO (n.d.). Blue lines tsunami safe zones. Retrieved at: https://wremo.nz/about-us/initiatives/blue-lines/
- Wood, N., Jones, J., Peters, J., & Richards, K. (2018). Pedestrian evacuation modeling to reduce vehicle use for distant tsunami evacuations in Hawai'i. International Journal of Disaster Risk Reduction, 28, 271-283. doi:10.1016/j.ijdrr.2018.03.009
- Wood, N. J., & Schmidtlein, M. C. (2013). Community variations in population exposure to near-field tsunami hazards as a function of pedestrian travel time to safety. Natural Hazards, 65(3), 1603–1628.
- Yoshii Hiroaki, Nakamura Isao, Nakamori Hiromichi, Jibiki Yasuhito. (2008). The information dissemination and behaviors of the inhabitants in the 2 earthquakes in Hokkaido 2006-2007.
- You, H. (2013). A strategic modelling framework for victim estimation in floods by linking flood evacuation modelling a case study: *Land Van Mass En Wall.* (Master's Thesis University of Twente)

## **Appendices**

### Appendix A: Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey

### A1 Human Ethics Committee approval letter

This appendix provides a copy of the approval letter of the low risk application to the Human Ethics Committee. This letter confirms the review and approval to conduct the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey.



**HUMAN ETHICS COMMITTEE** 

Secretary, Rebecca Robinson Telephone: +64 03 369 4588, Extn 94588 Email: human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz

Ref: HEC 2018/100/LR

4 January 2019

Laura Tilley Geological Sciences UNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY

Dear Laura

Thank you for submitting your low risk application to the Human Ethics Committee for the research proposal titled "Understanding Community Evacuation Dynamics Through Agent-Based Modelling in Kaikōura Following the 2016 Kaikōura Earthquake and Tsunami".

I am pleased to advise that this application has been reviewed and approved.

Please note that this approval is subject to the incorporation of the amendments you have provided in your email of  $12^{th}$  December 2018.

With best wishes for your project.

Yours sincerely

P. R. Robinson

Professor Jane Maidment

Chair, Human Ethics Committee

University of Canterbury Private Bag 4800, Christchurch 8140, New Zealand. www.canterbury.ac.nz

F E S

### A2 Human Ethics Committee – Low risk student application form

This appendix provides a complete copy of the Human Ethics Committee low risk student application form to conduct the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey.

### Human Ethics Committee -Student Application



For Office Use Only -**HEC Reference:** Date Received: Reviewers: Date Approved: Approved: (HEC Chair)

### HUMAN ETHICS APPLICATION COVERSHEET - STUDENT

Please remember that your audience for this application form, as well as all forms for participants, will include community members and scholars from outside your discipline and therefore must be written in everyday language. Please do not delete any part of this form. This form should be completed after reading the Research Involving Human Participants issued by

the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/study/ethics/

Will another ethics committee review this application?

- If a New Zealand Health and Disability Ethics Committee (HDEC) is reviewing your project, please send your HDEC application to us with this coversheet, and then the approval. You do not need to fill out the full University of Canterbury application form.
- If you have ethics approval from another institutional ethics committee (e.g. another New Zealand or Overseas University ethics committee) and you will conduct your research in the country of that ethics committee, please send this coversheet only with that application and the later approval letter, and an explanatory email. You do not, initially, need to fill out the full University of Canterbury application form.

### Please Bold your answers

Project Title: Understanding community evacuation dynamics through agent-based modelling in Kaikōura following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami

Status of Research: Master of Science

### Applicant

Name: Laura Tilley

University Programme/ Department: Disaster Risk and Resilience/Geological Sciences

Applicant's Email: laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz

Primary Telephone No: 027 385 7291

Primary Supervisor Title, given name and family name

Name: Thomas Wilson

University Programme/ Department: Disaster Risk and Resilience/Geological Sciences

Supervisor's Email: thomas.wilson@canterbury.ac.nz Primary Telephone No: +64 3 364-2987 ext 94503

Other Supervisors

Name: Matthew Hughes

University Programme/ Department: Civil and Natural Resources Engineering, University of

Canterbury

Supervisor's Email: matthew.hughes@canterbury.ac.nz

Primary Telephone No: +64 3 364 2987 ext 3328

Name: Sarah Beaven

University Programme/ Department: Disaster Risk and Resilience/Geological Sciences

Supervisor's Email: sarah.beaven@canterbury.ac.nz

Primary Telephone No:

#### RESEARCHER'S SIGNATURE

I Laura Tilley have considered, the various ethical issues involved in this research and have personally completed the application form; I have discussed this proposal with my supervisor(s), and I will conduct this research within the bounds of any approval given by the Human Ethics Committee of the University of Canterbury.

Signed:	Willad	Dated: 25/11/2018
0	Multip	

Is the approval of this application a necessary pre-requisite for the Dean of Postgraduate Studies to formally accept your PhD proposal? **NO** 

### SENIOR SUPERVISOR'S SIGNATURE

As the primary supervisor of *Laura Tilley's* research project I, *Thomas Wilson* consider that the design and documentation are of a standard appropriate for a research project carried out in the name of the University of Canterbury.

V Me Will	
Signed:	Dated: 29 November 2018

UC HEC Student Application Form - August 2017

(1 1/101

Page 2 of 14

#### LOW RISK PROCESSES (TO BE COMPLETED BY THE PRIMARY SUPERVISOR)

The low risk process for students differs from a full application only in that it is examined solely by the Chair of the Human Ethics Committee. As a result it may be possible to reply to the applicant in 7 days. It is to be signed only by supervisor(s).

Please explain why the research is low risk, noting the information overleaf If no explanation is provided, the application will be considered a full application.

The purpose of this research is to better understand the evacuation dynamics that occurred in Kaikōura as a result of the 14 November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake at 12.02 a.m. The intention is to derive this information from a range of sources, including media reports, official reports, social media, traffic monitoring sensors, and surveys to Kaikōura residents and accommodation providers. These data will be used to gain an understanding of the dynamics of this evacuation dynamics, and to inform agent-based modelling to develop a tsunami evacuation model for the Kaikōura community. Outputs are expected to be of particular value for emergency management personnel, and policy and hazard analysts involved in tsunami evacuation planning. The project has been initiated in response to a request that arose out of ongoing collaborative research support for the recovery effort in the Kaikōura District. In the first instance findings will help Kaikōura District Council Emergency Management personnel and Environment Canterbury hazard analysts to select optimal tsunami evacuation routes and safe zone locations for the Kaikōura community. Findings are also expected to contribute directly to more effective tsunami evacuation planning for Kaikōura and New Zealand.

Initial collection of available open source data and official reports has begun. This research is now at the stage of inviting residents and moteliers in the Kaikōura community to participate in a survey and provide information on their evacuation response. This HEC application pertains only to this survey.

The survey is expected to be low risk for both participants and researchers. The survey aims to gather information from residents and moteliers concerning remembered evacuation behaviour and responses following the 14 November 2016 Kaikōura Earthquake and Tsunami. Questions will ask about

- Evacuation origin and destination
- Modes of transportation used to evacuate
- · Estimates of travel time to destination and initial response time
- · Experience and locations of traffic congestion
- Use of known walkways or tracks

It is not expected that the surveys will cause cultural offence. However we are mindful that this could have been a distressing event for some people, and that the survey may remind them of this distress. To mitigate this risk the survey will include information (in the introduction and on the final page) for those wishing to access support from the Mental Health Education and Resources Centre, which includes information about a range of emotional and mental health resources (www.mherc.org.nz/seeking-help, 033655344).

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

Signed (Senior/Primary Supervisor only)

Dated: 29 November 2013

### SUBMISSION INSTRUCTIONS.

Please submit ONE electronic file containing all the necessary documents in a PDF format and ONE fully signed hard copy. Exceptions may be made, but must be discussed first with the HEC Secretary. Processing of HEC applications is unable to begin until a hard copy of the application has been received by the Ethics Office.

Electronic copies should be emailed to <a href="https://human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz">human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz</a>. Hard copies should be sent to the Secretary, Human Ethics Committee (Level 5, Matariki South).

Low Risk application information:

Research may be considered low risk when it arises from

- a Masters or PhD theses where the projects do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of a sensitive nature about or from individuals.
- b Masters or PhD level supervised projects undertaken as part of specific course requirements where the projects do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of sensitive nature about or from individuals.
- c Undergraduate and Honours class research projects which do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of sensitive nature about or from individuals, but do not have blanket approval as specified in Section 4 of the Principles and Guidelines.
- 3. No research can be counted as low risk if it involves:
  - (i) invasive physical procedures or potential for physical harm
  - (ii) procedures which might cause mental/emotional stress or distress, moral or cultural offence
  - (iii) personal or sensitive issues
  - (iv) vulnerable groups
  - Tangata Whenua (if in doubt please see the comments under question 12 on the application form)
  - (vi) cross cultural research
  - (vii) investigation of illegal behaviour(s)
  - (viii) invasion of privacy
  - (ix) collection of information that might be disadvantageous to the participant
  - use of information already collected that is not in the public arena which might be disadvantageous to the participant
  - (xi) use of information already collected which was collected under agreement of confidentiality
  - (xii) participants who are unable to give informed consent
  - (xiii) conflict of interest e.g. the researcher is also the lecturer, teacher, treatment-provider, colleague or employer of the research participants, or there is any other power relationship between the researcher and the research participants.
  - (xiv) deception
  - (xv) audio or visual recording without consent
  - (xvi) withholding benefits from "control" groups
  - (xvii) inducements (over a nominal amount of \$20, for example to recompense travel costs)
  - (xviii) risks to the researcher

This list is not definitive but is intended to sensitise the researcher to the types of issues to be considered. Low risk research would involve the same risk as might be encountered in normal daily life.

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

### DESCRIPTION OF THE PROJECT

1. What does the project seek to do?

### This project seeks to:

- Gain an understanding of evacuation dynamics (origin, route, destination, timing and mode of transport of evacuation) in Kaikōura following the 14 November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami.
- Use the results of the surveys e.g. evacuation times, evacuation routes, origin and destination evacuation points to inform agent-based evacuation modelling.
- To use the results of the agent-based tsunami evacuation model and surveys to better inform tsunami evacuation planning in Kaikoura and New Zealand.
- 2. What is the research question or hypothesis of this project?

### The research questions are:

- What were the evacuation dynamics in Kaikoura following the 2016 Kaikoura earthquake and tsunami?
- How can these findings be used to inform agent-based tsunami evacuation modelling in order to improve future tsunami evacuation planning?
- Describe how this project arose i.e., please explain the academic area or issue etc. which
  generated the question(s) to be examined this is to allow lay members of the committee some
  context for the research.

The topic arose out of discussions in 2017 involving the supervision team (Thomas Wilson and Matthew Hughes), hazard analyst Helen Jack from Environment Canterbury, and Kaikōura District Council Emergency Management officer Kd Scattergood. Both these practitioners were concerned about evacuation as a result of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami, yet were unsure exactly what happened – with only anecdotal accounts available to inform future evacuation planning. They therefore requested that this project be carried out as part of on-going collaborative research supporting recovery efforts in the Kaikōura District.

This research also aligns with a two-year project called 'Quicker Safer Tsunami Evacuations' funded by the Natural Hazard Research Platform involving GNS Science, University of Canterbury, Massey University and East Coast LAB; and is funded as part of the National Science Challenge 'Resilience to Natures Challenges' Rural co-creation laboratory

4. How will you go about answering the research question?

UC HEC Student Application Form - August 2017

Page 6 of 14

A survey will be used to answer the research questions by collecting responses from community members (residents and accommodation providers) who evacuated. This primary data, which is rare in global disaster evacuation knowledge, will contributing to a more detailed picture of the evacuation dynamics undertaken by the Kaikōura community as a result of the 14 November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami. This data will be supplemented and informed by analysis of additional data sources:

- 1. Official media reports and social media platforms
- 2. Field data collected by the researchers e.g. average walking speeds along tracks in Kaikōura
- 3. Evacuee data collected by GNS Science (will be shared on the basis of prior collaboration agreement within the NHRP research programme) to compare with and inform an agent-based tsunami evacuation model for Kaikōura

The survey data will be analysed, and will contribute to data input for a bespoke agentbased tsunami evacuation model for Kaikoura.

#### INFORMATION ABOUT THE PARTICIPANTS

5. Who are the participants and why have they been chosen to be asked to participate?

Participants will be members of the Kaikōura community who were living or present in Kaikōura at the time of the Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami on 14 November 2016. The focus is on residents and motel/hotel owners, since this earthquake occurred at 12.02 a.m. when other businesses were closed.

How many participants will be involved (of each category where relevant)? Please include statistical justification where necessary.

The aim is to collect as many survey responses as possible from residents and motel/hotel owners present or living in Kaikōura during the 14 November 2016 earthquake and tsunami. Hardcopies of the survey will be letter-box dropped in the coastal township, inviting all residents (the township population is approximately 2,080) to complete the survey (Statistics New Zealand, 2013). We would like to give all households the opportunity to participate in this study, however a high participation rate is unlikely given the geographic scale of the research area, seasonal visitor trends, and high numbers of holiday homes in the township. 50 survey responses would be a satisfactory response.

Statistics New Zealand. (2013). 2013 Census QuickStats about a place: Kaikōura District. Retrieved from <a href="http://archive.stats.govt.nz/Census/2013-census/profile-and-summary-reports/quickstats-about-a-place.aspx?url=/Census/2013-census/profile-and-summary-reports/quickstats-about-a-place.aspx&request\_value=14704&reportid=10&tabname</a>

7. What selection criteria and/or exclusion criteria will you use? i.e., randomly, by age, gender, ethnic origin, other – please give details. What plans do you have if the recruitment phase is too successful, or does not recruit enough participants?

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

Selection will be on an opt-in basis, based on availability, willingness to participate, and whether or not potential respondents were present or living in Kaikōura at the time of the 2016 earthquake event.

8. Describe how potential participants will be identified and recruited?

The researcher (LT) will undertake a letter drop to all/most houses and motels/hotels in the Kaikōura Township. Kaikōura Township including South Bay (NZ Statistics 2017 Area Unit) is the key focus of this research (Figure 1). If and when possible the researcher (LT) will also hand out hard copies of the surveys in Kaikōura's town centre (along West End) during a pre-planned field trip in February. An online version of the survey link will also be available to selected online community groups e.g. Facebook Kaikōura Notice Board and Kaikōura District Council Facebook Page, where members will be invited to participate and share the survey link.



9. Does the project involve recruitment through advertising? YES

This research (online survey link) will be posted on Kaikōura's community Facebook page which is called 'Kaikōura Notice Board'. Laura requested permission to join the page, in which she mentioned she is not a local but carrying out research in Kaikōura. The administrators accepted her request on 10/11/2018, making her a member of this Facebook page. Administrators will be messaged directly and asked for consent to post the online survey link on this page. If they believe their platform is not suitable to post the online survey link it will not be posted.

UC HEC Student Application Form - August 2017

The Kaikōura District Council Emergency Management officer (part of the research team) has also offered her connections to advertise this research and encourage interested residents to participate in the survey. The Kaikoura District Council Emergency Management Officer has offered to put the survey link on the Kaikoura District Council website and to write a story on this research for the council newsletter this will include the survey link (see attached email).

The survey will also be advertised on:

- Kaikõura District Council Facebook Page
- Kaikoura District Council Newsletter
- Kaikoura Notice Board (community Facebook page)
- 10. How much time are participants asked to contribute to the research?

Approximately 15 - 20 minutes

- 11. Is any form of inducement to be offered? NO
- 12. How will the participants be treated?

Participants will receive a letter in their letterbox inviting them to participate, and giving them two options. If they choose to complete a hard-copy survey they can use the prepaid addressed envelope to return the completed survey, or alternatively photograph the completed pages and email them to <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a>

Alternatively, participants can use a link that take them to the online survey. This link will be provided on the hard-copy survey. It will also be made available on relevant social media platforms, that will allow participants can access the survey through a shareable link <a href="https://bit.ly/2FLSozu">https://bit.ly/2FLSozu</a>

The survey is comprised of a series of questions and check-box style answers, with directions to select one response only. Some questions include a drop-down option where the respondent can use additional text to answer in more detail, or otherwise comment in response to the question. In the hard-copy survey, participants that evacuated will also be asked to draw their evacuation route on a map. For the online survey, there will be a text box where participants will be asked to explain their evacuation route in detail.

- 13. Will forms for participants need to be translated? NO
- Will the project require engagement and consultation with iwi Māori? NO (delete inapplicable)
  - Will the design, implementation or outcomes of the project have implications for iwi Māori?
  - Will there be significant Māori content, use of culturally sensitive material or knowledge?
  - Will the research require access to Māori sites, or sampling of flora/fauna?
  - · Will there be Māori participants or subjects?
  - Will the ethnicity of participants be recorded and likely to result in different treatment for Māori participants during the study or result in statements specifically about Māori in the results?

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

If the answer is yes to any of the questions above, you should contact your College's Māori research advisors. Contact details for the Maori advisors in your College and other important information and advice regarding engaging with Māori are available at <a href="http://www.research.canterbury.ac.nz/maoriresearch/ntceg.shtml">http://www.research.canterbury.ac.nz/maoriresearch/ntceg.shtml</a>

The advisor will be able to help you assess whether you need to seek further consultation and engagement, and whether you need to contact the Kaiārahi Maori research in order to access the Ngāi Tahu Consultation and Engagement Group. Should you have already organised a Māori steering group/senior Māori advisor to work with you on your project, please check with them on the need for consultation.

#### OTHER PARTIES WITH AN INTEREST IN THE RESEARCH

- 15. Does the project require permission of an organisation, other people, to access participants or information? Yes as mentioned above, permission/consent will be asked of social media platform administrators to provide a shareable link to the survey on relevant Facebook Pages, and the Kaikōura Gets Ready webpage. It is expected that those who manage or own motels or hotels will have the authority to respond to the survey without requiring permission from other parties.
- 16. Will the project require Community consultation? NO
- 17. Is the project funded externally? NO (delete inapplicable). If yes, please provide details and discuss any conflict of interest issues that may arise.
- 18. Is the project commissioned by or carried out on behalf of an external organisation(s)? NO
- 19. Is the project to be part of the CEISMIC digital archive? NO

### DATA COLLECTION

- 20. Does the project involve a questionnaire? YES
  - (a) Explain how and why the questionnaire(s) will be anonymous or confidential

Confidential: Survey responses will not include names, but will include gender and street addresses, and so will not be strictly anonymous. Raw data will be kept confidential to the researcher and her supervisors. Data will be otherwise anonymised, so that identifying details will not be discernible in any material that enters the public domain.

(b) Explain how the questionnaire will be distributed and collected.

The survey will be distributed in two ways. Access to an online survey will be provided as a shareable link on Facebook community pages. A letter box drop of a hard-copy

UC HEC Student Application Form - August 2017

survey will include all or most residential properties and motel/hotel complexes in the Kaikōura Township. The researcher has a pre-planned field trip (1 week) in February 2019 to distribute the surveys. She will also spend a couple of hours standing along West End and handing out surveys to residents if necessary. The researchers are mindful that this is a tourist destination, and that many of the properties receiving the survey are likely to be holiday homes. Upon completion of the form, participants will either email photos of the forms to <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a> or post them to Laura Tilley at UC in a pre-paid envelope (which will be provided with the letter drop).

- 21. Does the project involve a structured or semi-structured interview? NO (delete inapplicable).
  If yes, please list the topics or the specific questions to be covered.
- 22. Does the project involve an unstructured interview? NO
- 23. Does the project involve focus groups? NO
- 24. Does the project involve recording of Audio, Video or Images? NO
- Will participants will be given the opportunity to check the transcript and/or notes of their interview/focus group? N/A

### INFORMED AND VOLUNTARY CONSENT

Please note: The HEC recommends that participants receive an information sheet, which they must be able to retain, unless there are good reasons for not adopting such a procedure. The information sheet(s) and the consent form(s) should be separate. Projects which only involve an anonymous questionnaire may not necessarily require a separate information sheet, provided that the questionnaire includes your name and contact number as well as the other points contained in the information and consent templates available on the HEC website. Please note: so that participants can retain a copy of the information sheets, the information sheet(s) and the consent form(s) should be separate.

26. By whom and how will information be given to potential participants?

A hard copy information sheet will be provided to participants along with the survey form. A written consent form will also be provided as the first page of the hard copy survey. If this form has not been completed the relevant responses will not be included in the survey results.

The online survey will open onto an information sheet and a consent form. Participants will be asked to provide consent before proceeding to the survey.

When appropriate or if requested, the researcher (Laura) will meet with community members to discuss the survey form, and clarify any issues people might have. Laura

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

(and possibly a research assistant) has a week-long field trip scheduled for early —mid February 2019, in order to distribute hard-copy surveys. Both will also be available to meet with residents and answer questions over this time. The information sheet will also encourage respondents to get in contact with Laura or the supervision team by phone or email if they have any questions or concerns. It will be clear that the participant can say no or withdraw from completing the survey at any point (see 'Information Sheet' attached to this application).

27. Are all participants competent to give consent on their own behalf? YES

If no, please explain,

- (a) why they are not competent to give informed consent on their behalf?
- (b) how consent will be obtained in the absence of that competency?
- (c) if applicable, how will assent to participate be gained?

### PRIVACY AND CONFIDENTIALITY

- 28. Will information pertaining to or about the participants be obtained from any source other than the participant? NO
  - (a) the identity of the third party or parties.
  - (b) why such information is needed.
  - (c) how will you obtain consent from the participant and the third party/parties) to gather that data.
  - (d) the processes you will use to obtain that data.
- 29. Is information that identifies participants to be given to any person outside the research team, or if identification of or attribution of comments by participants is sought, please explain how and why. NO
- Please explain how confidentiality of the participants' identities will be maintained in the treatment and use of the data.

Survey results will be stored in a separate password-protected folder on the researcher's UC computer and on a geology drive (Cougar), behind a password protected folder. All data will be backed up on the UC server (geology Cougar drive is automatically backed up). Hard copies of completed surveys will be stored in a locked draw in the researcher's (Laura) office. Non-identifying data will be managed by using codes that are assigned to a participant on the consent form. Identifiable details, such as street addresses, will only be used to analyse evacuation routes and times, and to geocode data in evacuation models.

- 31. Is an institution (e.g., school, business, etc.) to which participants belong to be named or be able to be identified in the publication or presentation of this project? **NO**
- 32. Where will the project be conducted?

Hard-copy surveys will be handed out to all residential properties in the Kaikōura Township (see map above). It is expected that residents will complete the survey at their leisure in a venue of their choosing.

Since the focus of the survey is evacuation, commercial accommodation providers are the only businesses included in the letter box drop. With the exception of accommodation providers, commercial businesses will be excluded from this research, since the 14 November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake occurred at 12.02 a.m. a time when most commercial premises are unoccupied.

#### RISK

- 33. Is there any risk to physical well-being? NO
- 34. Could participation involve mental stress or emotional distress? YES

We are mindful that this could have been a distressing event for some people, and that the survey may remind them of this distress. We are also aware that Kaikōura communities are still in the recovery phase, when after-effects including secondary stressors (such as dealing with insurers, financial hardship and other impacts) often increase the stress of residents and communities. To mitigate these risks the survey and information sheet are designed to make it very clear that participation is voluntary, and to foreground information (in the introductory and final pages) for those wishing to access support from the Mental Health Education and Resources Centre, which includes information about a range of emotional and mental health resources (<a href="www.mherc.org.nz/seeking-help">www.mherc.org.nz/seeking-help</a>, 033655344). Researchers will also advise participants that there is no obligation to engage in the research process if psychological distress is a possibility.

- 35. Is there a possibility of causing moral or cultural offence, inadvertently or otherwise? NO
- 36. Is deception involved at any stage of the project? NO

#### DATA STORAGE AND FUTURE USE

37. Please provide details of how the data will be securely stored, and how you will separate identifying and non-identifying data.

Returned hard-copy surveys will be stored in a locked cabinet in the researcher's office. Results of the hard-copy surveys will be transcribed into an excel format which will stored on a password-protected file on the researchers computer as well as an external hard-drive.

This form should be completed after reading the *Human Ethics Policy* issued by the Human Ethics Committee available at http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics

Identifying data (e.g. the consent form) and non-identifying data will be specifically coded and stored in separate files.

38. Who, apart from the researcher and their supervisor (where applicable) will have authorised access to the data?

No one

39. What will happen to the raw data at the end of the project?

The data will be stored on the researcher's UC computer on a geology drive (Cougar), behind a password protected folder a password-protected file, this will be stored within the Department of Geological Sciences for 5 years, and then destroyed. Hard-copy surveys will be stored in the researcher's draw until this MSc is completed, then they will be destroyed.

40. What plans do you have for the publication of the data?

The data collected from the surveys is expected to contribute significantly to the development of an agent-based tsunami evacuation model for Kaikōura. The results will contribute to an MSc thesis, and additional published findings in the form of at least one paper submitted to a relevant peer-reviewed journal in the field of tsunami evacuation research.

41. Please describe plans for future use of the data beyond those already described above.

The MSc (including survey responses to inform data into the evacuation model) will be shared with emergency management personnel to inform tsunami evacuation planning in Kaikōura.

# A3 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami information sheet and survey This appendix provides a copy of the information sheet and 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami survey booklet.



# Understanding Kaikōura evacuation dynamics following the 2016 Kaikōura Earthquake

Information Sheet

February - March 2019













Department: Disaster Risk and Resilience/Geological Sciences

Telephone: +64 7 385 7291

Email: laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz

February - March 2019



# Understanding Kaikōura evacuation dynamics following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami

### Information Sheet for Participant

Kia ora my name is Laura Tilley and I am a student at the University of Canterbury studying towards a Master of Science in Disaster Risk and Resilience. This research will contribute to my thesis.

#### About the research

The evacuation of the Kaikōura community following the 14<sup>th</sup> November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake provides a valuable learning opportunity to understand evacuation behaviour to better inform planning for future tsunami event. We invite you to participate in this survey which aims to understanding Kaikōura evacuation dynamics following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami. Responses from this survey will be used to help develop a better tsunami evacuation plan for the Kaikōura community, which is exposed to tsunamis from both close to shore and across the Pacific Ocean. This research has been requested by Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence & Emergency Management and Environment Canterbury as part of on-going collaborative research supporting recovery in the Kaikōura District. It is funded through Resilience to Nature's Challenge — a National Science Challenge funded by the Ministry of Business Innovation and Employment.

#### Aims of the research

This research project seeks to increase understanding of the evacuation dynamics following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake, including factors such as how many people evacuated, where they evacuated from and to and how, and how long it took. As well as surveying Kaikoura residents we will also evaluate official reports and reviews, and information on social media.

The results of this evaluation will inform an evacuation model being developed for the Kaikōura community. Survey data of actual human behaviour during an evacuation will be used to test, refine and validate the model. Findings of this research will help with future evacuation planning and increase community readiness and response for future earthquakes and tsunamis.

This research will be undertaken by University of Canterbury researchers Laura Tilley, Associate Professor Thomas Wilson, Dr Matthew Hughes and Dr Sarah Beaven, in collaboration with Environment Canterbury, Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence & Emergency Management and GNS Science.

#### What will the research be used for?

The findings will be shared with Environment Canterbury, Kaikōura District Council Civil Defence & Emergency Management and GNS Science to help inform tsunami evacuation planning.

### Your involvement in the study

You are being invited to take part in this research. If you choose to do so, your involvement will consist of providing information about what you did immediately after the November 2016 Kaikōura earthquake. The survey will ask if you evacuated or not, and if so, where to, what routes you used, how long it took to get there, and so on. If you













evacuated your home following the initial earthquake shaking, you will be invited to draw your evacuation route on an enlarged map of Kaikōura. We estimate completing the survey will take approximately 15 - 20 minutes.

The survey can be completed in this hard-copy booklet, or if you prefer you can access an online version of exactly the same survey at <a href="https://bit.ly/2FLSozu">https://bit.ly/2FLSozu</a>. To return the hard-copy booklet, please either return it in the pre-paid envelope included in this package, or take a photo of the survey pages and the consent form and email to <a href="https://aura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a>.

Participation is voluntary and you have the right to withdraw at any stage without penalty. Closing the internet browser will withdraw you from the online survey. You will have the option to amend/change/remove any information you provide on the survey form.

We do not anticipate that completing the survey will pose significant risks to you. However it may trigger distressing memories of the earthquake and related events. If so, there is no obligation to engage with this research, or to continue to do so. You may withdraw at any time, and please note that support is available at the Mental Health Education and Resource Centre (www.mherc.org.nz/seeking-help, 033655344).

Once you have completed the survey, you may contact the research team and ask for your survey data to be returned to you or destroyed at any point before 15th March 2019. If you choose to withdraw, we will remove information relating to you. However, once analysis of data starts it will become more difficult to reduce the influence of your data on the results; data analysis will be finalised by the 1st April 2019, which will include your results.

The data gathered in this investigation will be kept strictly confidential to the University of Canterbury researcher Laura Tilley, and her supervisory team, Associate Professor Thomas Wilson, Dr Matthew Hughes, and Dr Sarah Beaven. All details about survey participants will remain strictly confidential, and no details that could identify you (such as street address) will be included in publications that result from the information that you provide in the survey. No one else will have access to this information, which will be stored in locked and secure facilities and in password-protected electronic form. Any data you have provided will be destroyed after five years.

Please indicate on the consent form if you would like to receive a copy of the summary of results of the project. We would be really glad to share this with you.

Laura Tilley is leading this project, and she can be contacted at <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a> or 027 385 7291. She is happy to discuss any concerns you may have about participation. You can also contact Thomas Wilson at <a href="mailto:thomas.wilson@canterbury.ac.nz">thomas.wilson@canterbury.ac.nz</a> or 03 369 4503 ext. 94503 or Matthew Hughes at <a href="mailto:matthew.hughes@canterbury.ac.nz">matthew.hughes@canterbury.ac.nz</a> or 03 364 2987 ext. 94599.

This project has been reviewed and approved by the University of Canterbury Human Ethics Committee, and participants should address any complaints to The Chair, Human Ethics Committee, University of Canterbury, Private Bag 4800, Christchurch (human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz).

If you agree to participate in the study, you are asked to complete the consent form before filling out the survey.













### Kaikōura evacuation response to the 14<sup>th</sup> November 2016 Earthquake

Department: Disaster Risk and Resilience/Geological Sciences

Cell phone: 027 385 7291

Email: laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz

February - March 2019



# Understanding Kaikōura Evacuation Dynamics that occurred following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami Consent Form for Participants

### Confidentiality

lame:	Signed:Date:
	By signing below, I agree to participate in this project.
	I would like a summary of the results of the project.
	I understand that I can contact the lead researcher Laura Tilley on 027 385 7291 or <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a> or research supervisor's Thomas Wilson on +64 3 369 4503 Ext 94503 or thomas.wilson@canterbury.ac.nz or Matthew Hughes <a href="mailto:matthew.hughes@canterbury.ac.nz">matthew.hughes@canterbury.ac.nz</a> for further information. If I have any complaints, I can contact the Chair of the University of Canterbury Human Ethics Committee, Private Bag 4800, Christchurch (human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz)
	I understand that all data collected for the study will be kept in locked and secure facilities and in password protected electronic form and will be destroyed after five years.
	I understand that any information or opinions I provide will be kept confidential to the researcher and the researcher's supervisor and that any published or reported results will not identify the participants.
	I understand that participation is voluntary and I may withdraw at any time. Withdrawal of participation will also include the withdrawal of any information I have provided should this remain practically achievable (before 15 <sup>th</sup> March, 2019).
	I understand what is required of me if I agree to take part in the research.
	questions.
	I have been given a full explanation of this project and have had the opportunity to ask

If you require any support services, please contact research supervisor Thomas Wilson on +64 3 369 4503 Ext 94503 or thomas.wilson@canterbury.















### Evacuation response to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake – Kaikōura

TO RETURN THIS SURVEY: EMAIL THIS BOOKLET (consent form and survey) TO <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a> OR RETURN IN THE PRE-PAID ENVELOPE. ALTERNATIVELY USE THIS LINK TO ACCESS THE SURVEY ONLINE: https://bit.ly/2FLSozu

Q1. Dic	the earthquake on Monday 14th November 2016	at 12.02 a	.m. wake you up? (Tick only one)
1 3	Yes Not applicable (I was already awake)	2	No
Q2. Ho	w strong did the earthquake feel to you? (Tick only	one)	
1   3   5   7	Not felt Gentle, hardly recognised as an earthquake (like light trucks passing) Moderate (could still stand up) Violent/severe	2 4	Heard but not felt A jolt or mild, but unmistakably an earthquake (like heavy traffic passing) Strong/powerful (hard to stand up)
Q3. For	how long did you feel the earthquake shaking?	se	conds (as <u>best</u> you can estimate) <b>OR</b>
	Don't know	2	Not felt
Comn	nents:		
1 3 5	w much damage did the earthquake do to your hom None Moderate Totally destroyed nents:	1e? (Tick o	only <u>one)</u> Slight Severe Not applicable
Q6. W	[1] 사람들은 10 No. 20 No.		give details)  y specific, e.g. give the address, nearest street corner or
landma	ark)		
Q7. Dic	d you evacuate? (Tick only <u>one)</u> ents:	_1	Yes (skip to Q9)
Q8. If y	you did not evacuate, why not? (Please give details)		
Q9. Did	d you evacuate more than once? (Tick only <u>one)</u> why?	1	Yes D <sub>2</sub> No
Q10. W	Where did you evacuate to? (Please be very specific,	e.g. give t	he address, nearest street corner or landmark)
	UC & Environment	PA 1	NATURAL MESU ANCE DESCRIPTION SCIENCE













UC WUNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY

Q11. Please draw your evacuation route on the map below <u>OR</u> if you prefer, please describe your evacuation route in as much detail as possible in the text box below e.g. roads, waking tracks, path behind property etc.

If you evacuated more than once, please draw/describe all evacuation routes you took

















Kaikoura evacuation	response to	tne 14	November	2016	Eartnquake



Describe your evacuation route:		CANTERBURY To What Beingary a Blandar Conservation for Manager
Q12. If you did evacuate, was it because of a possible tsu Q13. If not because of a possible tsunami, why did you e	•	
Q14. What warned you of a possible tsunami coming? (T	ick <u>all</u> that apply	γ)
☐ The earthquake (natural warning) ☐ Other community members	∐² □₄	Other household/family members Emergency services (e.g. Police, Fire Service)
Official warning from Civil Defence (on social	<u> </u>	Tsunami sirens
media, radio, TV)  Other (please describe)	□s	I never thought/ have never been aware there could be a tsunami
Comments		
Comments:		
Q15. What sources of information did you use to decide	to evacuate? (T	ick <b>all</b> that apply)
The earthquake (natural warning)		Other household/family members
☐₃ Other community members	🗖 4	Emergency services
Official warning from Civil Defence (on social med radio, TV)	ııa, <u>□</u> 7	Other (please describe)
□₀ GeoNet		
Comments:		
Q16. What was the MAIN reason that made you decide	to evacuate? (Ti	ck only <b>one</b> )
1 The earthquake (natural warning)		Other household/family members
3 Other community members	4	Emergency services
□₃ Official warning from Civil Defence (on social med radio, TV) □₀ GeoNet	dia, □ <sub>7</sub>	Other (please describe)
Comments:		
Q17. What did you do before evacuating? (Tick all that a	pply)	













Kaikōura	evacuation response to the 14 <sup>th</sup> November 2016 Earl	thquake	UNIVERSITY OF CANTERPH INV
1 3 5	Nothing (evacuated immediately) Gathered life essentials (food, water) Called family or friends	2 4 6	Gathered family/household members Collected valuables (jewellery, money etc.) Assisted others in evacuation (e.g. friends or neighbours)
	Sought further official information (from radio, TV, internet, GeoNet) Gathered my pets		Discussed action plan with family/other community members Other (please describe)
11	Not applicable		
Comment	ts:		
Q18. How	olong did all of these actions take before you actually	y started e	vacuating? (Tick only <u>one</u> )
	One minute or less 5 - 10 minutes	2	1-5 minutes 10 - 20 minutes
H,	20 - 30 minutes	<b>□</b>	30 minutes - 1 hour
	One hour or more		Not applicable
Comment	ts:		
Q19. Wha	at time did you evacuate?		
Q20. Onc		ch your de	stination? minutes (as <u>best</u> you can estimate)
Q21. Did	you evacuate individually or with others? If with oth	ers, please	describe:
Q22. How	did you travel to your evacuation destination? (Tick	only <u>one</u> )	
ı	Car	2	Run
∐³ □.	Walk Other (please describe):	4	Bicycle or similar
□,	<del></del>		
Comment	ts: 		
Q23. Did	you encounter any traffic congestion or were you aw	are of con	gestion problems? ☐ 2 Yes ☐ 2 No (skip to Q27)
Q24. If ye	es, which roads or areas were congested? Please indic	cate these	roads and areas on the map
	UNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY CONTERBURY Control Council Agaziners Total A Multivia Control Council Control Control Council Control Control Council Control Council Control Control Council Control Council Control	4 GNS	NATURAL MESILENCE TO NATURES ON ALENCES VALUE OF THE COLOR OF THE COLO

Kaikōura evacuation response to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake  UNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY				
Q25. On average, how slow do you think traffic was moving in the estimate)	ese cong	ested areas? km/h (as <u>best</u> you can		
Q26. How long were these roads or areas congested for? From _ Comments:		_a.m. until a.m. (as <u>best</u> you can estimate).		
Q27. Did you observe stages/surges of evacuation traffic? At wha	t times o	lid these occur?		
Q28. Did you need help to evacuate? (Tick only one)				
1 Yes (please describe)	2	No (skip to Q30)		
	З	Waited for a relative to arrive		
Q29. If yes, how did this affect the evacuation process? (Tick only  1 I received the support I needed  1 It was a barrier so I did not evacuate	<u>one</u> )	It delayed the evacuation, but I evacuated anyway		
Comments:				
Q30. How long did you stay at your evacuation point?	hours _	minutes (as <u>best</u> you can estimate)		
Q31. Why did you decide to return from your evacuation point? (  1 When I felt it was safe (after seeing evidence that there was no danger)  After a reasonable time	Tick <u>all</u> th	nat apply) After discussing with others  When I received an official 'All Clear' message		
Other (please describe)	<u></u>	Sunrise		
Q32. Do you have any other comments about the evacuation?	-			
UNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY DIFFURDATIONAL DISTRICT COUNCIL DIFFURDATIONAL DISTRICT COUNCIL DI	GNS	NATURAL HAZARDS INMARIA PLITTER  WESTLEMEN TO NATURES TO ANATURES TO ANATURES TO ANATURES TO ANATURE TO THE ANATURE TO AN		





Q33. Fo	Illowing your evacuation response to Yes Not applicable	o the 2016 Kaikõura earthqua	ake, would you consider a No	different evacuation route?
	lease draw your planned evacuation ext box below:	n route on the map below (ne	ext page) OR describe you	r planned evacuation route
-				
8000				



















### Kaikōura evacuation response to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake



024 Wh	at is your gondar? (Tick only one)		To Whore Witnesses o Males CHROCKWICK NEW MALES
1 3	<b>at is your gender?</b> (Tick only <u>one</u> ) Male Gender diverse	2 4	Female Prefer not to disclose
Q35. Hov	v old are you? Under 15 Years 65 years and Over	2 4	15 – 64 Years Prefer not to disclose
Q36. Whi	ich best describes the situation you are living in? (Ticl	conly <u>one</u> )	
1 3 5	Family with children Alone Prefer not to disclose	2	Family without children With non-family
	or to the Monday 14 <sup>th</sup> November 2016 Earthquake, he evacuate? (Tick only <u>one</u> )	ow would y	ou describe your knowledge of tsunamis and the
1	Non-existent	2	Very poor
☐3 ☐5	Poor Good	∐4 □6	Fair Very good
	ou were aware prior to the 14 <sup>th</sup> November 2016 Earth ion sources? (Tick <u>all</u> that apply)	quake of t	sunamis and the need to evacuate, what were your
1	I was not aware of tsunamis and the need to evacuate Formal education – primary/intermediate school Formal education – tertiary education (university/polytechnic)  Documentaries (television or movies) Community meetings - Civil Defence Discussions with Civil Defence Staff	2 4 6 8 110 112	Civil Defence information (e.g. back of phone book, pamphlets) Formal education – secondary school Media coverage of previous tsunamis (e.g. 2004 Indonesia Boxing Day Tsunami, 2011 Tohoku Tsunami) Books, or articles in magazines/newspapers Community meetings - Other Discussions with family and friends
Q39. How all that ap	Other (please describe)  v did your prior awareness of tsunamis influence you pply)  I had discussed/prepared an evacuation plan for my family/household I had arranged to check on my neighbours It did not influence my behaviour	r behaviou	Ir BEFORE the 14 <sup>th</sup> November 2016 Earthquake? (Tic I had prepared a go-bag I had prepared an emergency kit Other (please describe)
	v did your prior awareness of tsunamis influence you ke? (Tick <u>all</u> that apply)	r behaviou	
_ı	I had prior awareness but it did not influence my	_2	Moved to higher ground
3 5 7	behaviour Moved inland/away from beach Alerted or check on family/friends/neighbours Monitored websites (e.g. GeoNet, Civil Defence, Council) for further information Other (please describe)	4 6 8	Gathered essential items before evacuating Listened to radio for further information Monitored social media (e.g. Facebook, Twitter) for further information
	University of Canterbury Regional Council District Council	7 <b>SINE</b>	NATURAL HESILENCE PROFESSIONAL SCIENCE CALLENGES TANDERS OF THE ACTION CONTROL

#### Kaikōura evacuation response to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake

Q41. Following the 14th November 2016 Earthquake, how would you describe your CURRENT knowledge of tsunamis and the need to evacuate? (Tick only one) Non-existent Very poor Poor Fair Good Very good Q42. Which of the following preparations have you made in case of another significant earthquake and tsunami evacuation? (Tick all that apply) I have made no preparations Discussed evacuation plan with family/household members Arranged to check on neighbours to ensure they Prepared a go-bag containing essential items are aware of evacuation Identified evacuation routes/destinations Made yourself aware of evacuation zone information (e.g. Canterbury Maps Evacuation  $\square_7$ Ensured easy access to online information updates □s Prepared an emergency kit with essential supplies (e.g. bookmarked Civil Defence website on your (e.g. food and water for 3 days) 9 Other (please describe)

Thank you for your participation, it is greatly appreciated.

TO RETURN THIS SURVEY: EMAIL THIS BOOKLET (consent form and survey) TO <a href="mailto:laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz">laura.tilley@pg.canterbury.ac.nz</a> OR RETURN IN THE PRE-PAID ENVELOPE.

Front cover image retrieved from: https://www.christchurchnz.com/destinations/kaikoura/













# A4 Tabulated results of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey

This appendix provides tabulated results on all questions provided in the 2016 Kaikoura earthquake tsunami survey booklet (A3).

### Q1. Did the earthquake wake you up?

Did the earthquake wake you up?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	103	82
No	3	2
N/A	20	16
Total	126	100

# Q2. How strong did the earthquake feel to you? (on Monday 14th November 2016 at 12.02 a.m.) (Tick only one)

How strong did the earthquake feel to you? (On Monday 14th November 2016 at 12.02 a.m.) (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Not felt	1	1
Heard but not felt	1	1
Gentle, hardly recognised as an earthquake	0	0
A jolt or mild, but unmistakably an earthquake	1	1
Moderate	6	5
Strong/powerful (hard to stand up)	49	38
Violent/severe	73	57
Total	131	103

### Q3. For how long did you feel the earthquake shaking? - \_\_\_\_\_ seconds (as best can estimate)

For how long did you feel the earthquake shaking? seconds (as best can estimate)	Count (n)	% of respondents
< 60 seconds	12	10
60 seconds	14	12
60 - 120 seconds	25	22
120 seconds	31	27
> 120 seconds	14	12
Don't know	19	16
Not felt	1	1
Total	116	100

### Q4. How much damage did the earthquake do to your home?

How much damage did the earthquake do to your home?	Count (n)	% of respondents
None	3	2
Slight	46	39
Moderate	50	42
Severe	18	15
Totally destroyed	1	1
N/A	1	1

### Q5. Q5 What did you do after the earthquake stopped?

Common actions people said they did after the initial earthquake shaking stopped were:

- Many respondents jumped out of bed (with family) and evacuated to outside their property or on the road.
- Many residents said the evacuated immediately and drove to higher ground
- Many said they grabbed essential item e.g. evacuation kit, blankets, warm clothes, handbag, kevs
- A few people said the turned off the hot water cylinder before evacuating, others checked for damage to property
- A number of respondents said they went to go check on the neighbours
- People experienced difficulty getting their cars out of the garage due to power being cut off so garage door wold not open

### Q6. Survey respondent's location on the night of the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake



### Q7. Did you evacuate? - Selected Choice

Did you evacuate? - Selected Choice	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	88	69
No	39	31
Total	127	100

Q8. If you did not evacuate, why not?

If you did not evacuate, why not?	Count (n)	% of respondents
No need (high ground or inland)	27	62
Felt safe in home	8	19
Couldn't evacuate e.g. disability/impassable roads	5	12
Other	3	7
Total	43	100

### Q9. Did you evacuate more than once? - If yes, why?

Did you evacuate more than once? - If yes, why?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	19	17
No	91	83
Total	110	100

- Q10. Where did you evacuate to? (see map in results section of Chapter 3)
- Q11. **Evacuation routes** (see map in results section of Chapter 3).

### Q12. If you did evacuate, was it because of a possible tsunami?

If you did evacuate, was it because of a possible tsunami?	Count (n)	%
Yes	68	79
No	18	21
Total	86	100

### Q13. If not because of a possible tsunami, why did you evacuate? (please give details)

If not because of a possible tsunami, why did you evacuate? (please give details)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Didn't feel safe in house	10	45
Wanted to be with others	4	18
Instructed to do so	2	9
Did not evacuate	3	14
Other	3	14
Total	22	100

### Q14. What warned you of a possible tsunami coming? (Tick all that apply)

What warned you of a possible tsunami coming? (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
The earthquake	82	75
Other household/family members	16	15
Other community members	14	13
Emergency services	4	4
Official warning from CD	13	12
Tsunami sirens	1	1
Other	10	9
I never thought/have been aware there could be a tsunami	2	2
Comments	4	4

Q15. What sources of information did you use to decide to evacuate?

What sources of information did you use to decide to evacuate?	Count (n)	% of respondents
The earthquake	67	74
Other household/family members	17	19
Other community members	11	12
Emergency services	6	7
Official warning CD	6	7
GeoNet	2	2
Other	1	1

### Q16. What was the MAIN reason that made you decide to evacuate? (Tick only one)

What was the MAIN reason that made you decide to evacuate? (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
The earthquake	62	71
Other household/family members	9	10
Other community members	6	7
Emergency services	4	4
Official warning from CD	2	2
GeoNet	0	0
Other	5	6

### Q17. What did you do before evacuating? (Tick all that apply)

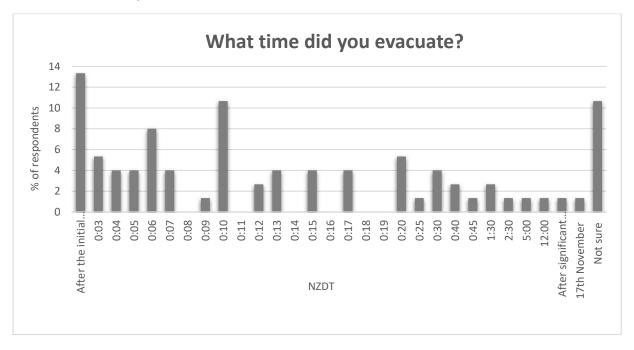
What did you do before evacuating? (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Nothing (evacuated immediately)	36	35
Gathered family/household members	33	32
Gathered life essentials	21	20
Collected valuables	2	2
Called family or friends	3	3
Assisted others in evacuation	17	17
Sought further information	2	2
Discussed action plan with family/other community members	9	9
Gathered my pets	14	14
Other	7	7

### Q18. How long did all of these actions take before you actually started evacuating? (Tick only one)

How long did all of these actions take before you actually started evacuating? (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
>1 min	19	21
1-5 mins	24	27
5-10 mins	20	22
10-20mins	11	12
20-30 mins	3	3
30 mins -1hour	3	3
One hour or more	2	2



### Q19. What time did you evacuate?



### Q20. Once you started evacuating, how long did it take to reach your destination?

- Average = 6.6 minutes
- Range = 1-25 minutes

### Q21. Did you evacuate individually or with others? if with others, please describe:

Did you evacuate individually or with others? if with others, please describe:	Count (n)	% of respondents
Alone	9	11
With partner	25	30
Family/Flatmate(s)	26	31
Neighbours/others	24	29

### Q22. How did you travel to your evacuation destination? (Tick only one)

How did you travel to your evacuation destination? (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Car	72	85
Run	4	5
Walk	9	10
Bike	0	0

### 23. Did you encounter any traffic congestion or were you aware of congestion problems?

Did you encounter any traffic congestion or were you aware of congestion problems?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	36	40
No	54	60

Total	90	100

# Q24. If yes, which roads or areas were congested? Please indicate these roads and areas on the map above

- Killarney Street
- Churchill Park
- Kaikōura Cemetery

See map presented in Chapter 3 for high vehicle counts along Kaikōura road network

- 25. On average, how slow do you think traffic was moving in these congested areas
  - Average = 18.23 minutes
  - Range = 0km/hr 60km/hr

Q26. How long were these roads or areas congested for? From \_\_\_\_ a.m. until \_\_\_\_ a.m. (as best you can estimate)

• Average = 3.3 hours

Q27. Did you observe stages/surges of evacuation traffic? at what times did these occur?

Areas reported that experienced/observed traffic congestion:

- Churchill Park area
- Post Office Cutting (Killarney St)
- Kaikōura Flat heading to Mt Fyffe

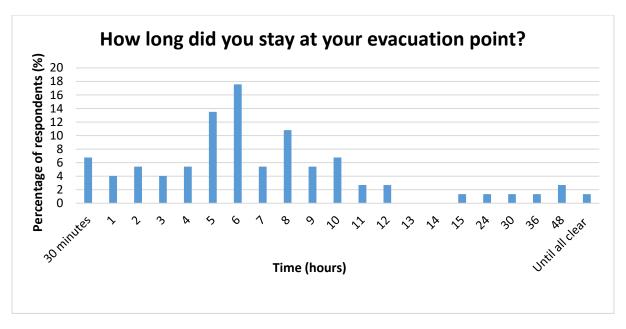
### Q28. Were you in need of any assistance for evacuating? (Tick only one)

Were you in need of any assistance for evacuating? (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	10	11
No	81	89
Waited for a relative to arrive	2	2

### Q29. If yes, how did this affect the evacuation process? (Tick only one)

If yes, how did this affect the evacuation process? (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
I received the support I needed	11	91
It delayed the evacuation, but I evacuated anyway		
It was a barrier, so I did not evacuate		

Q30. How long did you stay at your evacuation point? \_\_\_\_\_hours\_\_\_\_minutes (as best you can estimate)



### Q31. Why did you decide to return from your evacuation point? (Tick all that apply)

Why did you decide to return from your evacuation point? (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
When I felt it was safe	45	52
After discussing it with others	21	24
After a reasonable time	17	20
When I received an official 'all clear' message	11	13
Sunrise	17	20
Other	19	22

### Q32. Do you have any other comments about evacuation?

## Q33. Following your evacuation response to the 2016 Earthquake, would you consider a different evacuation route?

Following your evacuation response to the 2016 Earthquake, would you consider a different evacuation route?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Yes	11	12
No	67	76
N/A	11	12

### Q34. What is your gender?

What is your gender?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Male	46	36
Female	81	64
Gender diverse	0	0
Prefer not to disclose	0	0

### Q35. How old are you?

How old are you?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Under 15 years	0	0
15-64 years	61	49
65 years and over	62	50

Prefer not to disclose	1	1
------------------------	---	---

### Q36. Which best describes the situation you are living in?

Which best describes the situation you are living in?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Family with children	26	20
Family without children	60	47
Alone	36	28
With non-family	4	3
Prefer not disclose	2	2

# Q37. Prior to the Monday 14th November Earthquake, how would you describe your knowledge of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate?

Prior to the Monday 14th November Earthquake, how would you describe your knowledge of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate?	Count (n)	% of respondents
Non-existence	3	2
Very poor	3	2
Poor	8	6
Fair	26	21
Good	55	44
Very good	31	25

# Q38. If you were aware prior to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate, what were your information sources? (Tick all that apply)

If you were aware prior to the 14th November 2016 Earthquake of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate, what were your information sources? (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
I was not aware of tsunami and the need to evacuate	7	6
CD information	62	50
Formal education-primary	24	19
Formal education- Secondary	19	15
Formal education-tertiary	11	9
Media coverage of previous events	69	56
Documentaries	54	44
Books, articles, magazines	39	31
Community meetings-CD	16	13
Community meetings - other	6	5
Discussion with CD staff	14	11
Discussion with family and friends	51	41
Other	26	21

Q39. How did your prior awareness of tsunami hazards influence you behaviour BEFORE the 14th November 2016 Earthquake (Tick all that apply)

How did your prior awareness of tsunami hazards influence you behaviour BEFORE the 14th November 2016 Earthquake (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
I had discussed/prepared an evacuation plan for my family/household	42	35
i had prepared a go-bag	22	18
I had arranged to check on my neighbours	12	10
I had prepared an emergency kit	37	31
It did not influence my behaviour	45	38
Other	18	15

# Q40. How did your prior awareness of tsunami hazards influence your behaviour IMMEDIATELY AFTER the 14th November 2016 Earthquake (Tick all that apply)

How did your prior awareness of tsunami hazards influence your behaviour IMMEDIATELY AFTER the 14th November 2016 Earthquake (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
I had prior awareness but did not influence my behaviour	26	21
Moved to higher ground	68	56
Moved inland/away from beach	24	20
Gathered essential items before evacuating	21	17
Alerted or check on family/friends/neighbours	34	28
Listened to radio for further information	49	40
Monitored websites	12	10
Monitored social media	6	5
Other	15	12

# Q41. Following the 14th November 2016 Earthquake, how would you describe your CURRENT knowledge of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate (Tick only one)

Following the 14th November 2016 Earthquake, how would you describe your CURRENT knowledge of tsunami hazard and the need to evacuate (Tick only one)	Count (n)	% of respondents
Non-existent	1	1
Very poor	0	0
Poor	2	2
Fair	15	12
Good	57	46
Very good	49	40

# Q42. Which of the following preparations have you made in case of another significant earthquake and tsunami evacuation? (Tick all that apply)

Which of the following preparations have you made in case of another significant earthquake and tsunami evacuation? (Tick all that apply)	Count (n)	% of respondents
I have made no preparations	17	14
Discussed evacuation plan with family/household	67	54
Arranged to check on neighbours to ensure they are aware of evacuation	24	20

Prepared a go-bag containing essential items	53	43
Identified evacuation routes/destinations	46	37
Made yourself aware of evacuation zone information	21	17
Ensured easy access to online information updates	9	7
Prepared an emergency kit with essential supplies	70	57

This appendix provides a copy of the approval letter of the low risk application to the Human Ethics Committee. This letter confirms the review and approval to conduct the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami evacuation survey.

# Appendix B: Kaikōura High School 2018 ShakeOut observations

# **B1** Human Ethics Committee approval letter

This appendix provides a copy of the approval letter of the low risk application to the Human Ethics Committee. This letter confirms the review and approval to observe Kaikōura High School 2018 ShakeOut earthquake drill.



HUMAN ETHICS COMMITTEE

Secretary, Rebecca Robinson Telephone: +64 03 369 4588, Extn 94588 Email: human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz

Ref: 2018/06/ERHEC-LR

27 September 2018

Laura Tilley Geological Sciences UNIVERSITY OF CANTERBURY

Dear Laura

Thank you for submitting your low risk application to the Educational Research Human Ethics Committee for your research proposal titled "Understanding Community Evacuation Dynamics in Kaikõura Through Agent-Based Modelling Following the 2016 Kaikõura Earthquake".

I am pleased to advise that this application has been reviewed and I confirm support of the School's approval for this project.

With best wishes for your project.

Yours sincerely

pр

R. Robinson

Dr Patrick Shepherd

Educational Research Human Ethics Committee

Please note that ethical approval relates only to the ethical elements of the relationship between the researcher, research participants and other stabeholders. The granting of approval by the Educational Research Human Ethics Committee should not be interpreted as comment on the methodology, legality, value or any other matters relating to this research.

# B2 Human Ethics Committee - low risk student application form

This appendix provides a complete copy of the Human Ethics Committee low risk student application form to observe 2018 Kaikoura High School ShakeOut earthquake drill.



# Low Risk Application Form

# Ethical approval of low risk research involving human participants reviewed by departments or schools in the College of Education

PLEASE read the important notes appended to this form before completing the sections below

Researcher's Name:	Laura Tilley	
Name of Department or School:		
Email Address:	lrt33@uclive.ac.nz	
Title of Project:	Understanding community evacuation dynamics in Kaikōura through agent- based modelling following the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake	
Projected Start Date of Project:	17/08/2018	
Staff member/supervisor responsible for project:	Thomas Wilson, Matthew Hughes and Sarah Beaven	
Names of other participating staff and students:	NONE	
Status of Research: (e.g. Thesis)	MSc Thesis	
	roject:  y (approx. 300 words) of the nature of the proposal in lay language, including the of the project, rationale, participant description, and procedures/methods of the project.	

(Version April 2012) Page 1 of 7

The objective of this MSc thesis is to develop an agent-based tsunami evacuation model for the Kaikōura community. This research has been requested by Kaikōura District Council and Environment Canterbury, as part of on-going collaborative applied research supporting recovery in the Kaikōura district. Findings will be used to help Kaikōura District Council emergency mangers and Environment Canterbury hazard analysts to select optimal tsunami evacuation routes and destinations for the Kaikōura community, including Kaikōura High School.

To make the evacuation model as accurate as possible it is important to capture realistic human behaviour data during evacuations to input into this model. The study proposes to gather data to inform the agent-based evacuation model in two ways:

- a) surveying Kaikōura populations about their actions during the 2016 Kaikōura earthquake tsunami, when many people evacuated
- b) observing evacuation performance during the 2018 NZ ShakeOut earthquake drill and tsunami hikoi.

# This ethics application concerns only the proposed observation of Kaikōura High School's participation in the 2018 NZ ShakeOut.

NZ ShakeOut is New Zealand's annual earthquake drill and tsunami hikoi, which will take place on the 18th October 2018. Kaikōura High School is one of two high schools registered to participate in NZ ShakeOut this year. The purpose is for the school to better prepare and practice their response procedures if a future earthquake and tsunami event were to occur. In evacuation modelling, specifically tsunami evacuation modelling it is difficult to capture realistic evacuation behaviour to input into agent-based modelling (simulation of individuals evacuating from a start location to end location). ShakeOut provides a unique opportunity to observe Kaikōura High School's evacuation procedures if a future earthquake and tsunami were to occur during school hours. Capturing this data also helps with validating evacuation modelling approaches.

The research proposes to record the duration and dynamics of the evacuation of the school population to their 'safe zone' location. Specifically, this will include recording how long the school takes to

- Begin evacuating, following the initial warning
- Fully evacuate the school grounds
- . Arrive at and fully pass identified features along the route
- . Complete the evacuation hikoi by arriving at the safe zone location

The researcher will also gather data concerning the evacuation route taken by the school and factors that have influenced the time it takes.

Observing Kaikōura High School evacuation performance during ShakeOut will begin outside the school on Thursday 18th at 9,30am. The researcher has arranged with the school that she will approach one of the staff members to let them know that

 the observation has begun, and that the researcher will observe the exercise from outside the school grounds (with the exception of this initial contact).

The times taken for the school to begin evacuating, to leave the school grounds, pass identified features and complete the evacuation will be measured using the stopwatch feature on a cell phone, with individual times recorded on paper. A paper map extracted from the internet (Google Earth) will allow the researcher to draw the schools evacuation route, including estimated times at main features e.g. evacuation over a bridge. This will also help identify barriers that might influence evacuation performance such as rivers, buildings, and factors that limit access for children with disabilities. The researcher will walk 100m behind the evacuating body and record evacuation routes and time estimates on the map until they reach their 'safe zone' location. The researcher will stop recording information when they school has finished NZ ShakeOut and have completed their evacuation hikoi. Evacuation routes and time estimates will be manually uploaded into modelling software (ArcGIS) to represent a Kaikōura High School evacuation scenario. The results will provide information on average walking speeds and evacuation routes, and identify barriers students and staff may have had to overcome.

# Why is this a low risk application?

Description should include issues raised in the Low Risk Checklist (see below). Please give details of any ethical issues which were identified during the consideration of the proposal and the way in which these issues were dealt with or resolved.

Low Risk Application Form - 2009

This research application is low risk to the students and staff members involved in NZ ShakeOut.

The researcher proposes to remain at a distance of approximately 100 metres from evacuating staff and students in order to observe their evacuation movements during a simulated evacuation. Participants (students and staff) will not be asked to do anything, and there will no communication and/or interaction with the student body. No students or staff members will be identified in this research.

Initial interaction with one of the staff members will occur before NZ ShakeOut begins to ensure that they are aware of the researcher's presence and activities. The researcher will remain outside school grounds, and once the last group of students has left the school grounds, follow the evacuation hikoi at a distance of 100 meters for the duration of the evacuation.

The researcher has asked for consent to gather data from the school principal, who has confirmed that the school gives consent for the proposed data gathering. This followed an initial phone call (on Monday 17th September 2018) with a staff member to inform Kaikōura High School of the proposed research and to ask for permission to observe the school's evacuation performance during NZ ShakeOut. The staff member confirmed that the school in principle was likely to agree to the proposed data collection, on the grounds that the risk was minimal since what is proposed involves only observation from a distance. A subsequent email exchange with the principal of Kaikōura High School, John Tait, resulted in an email from him confirming that the school consents to the proposed data gathering.

The researcher has confirmed with the school staff member that

- no student or staff member will be identified either during the observation of the ShakeOut or in any subsequent data analysis or research outcomes.
- Communication between the school and the researcher on the day will be limited to initial contact to
  ensure that staff are aware that the researcher is in place, and will be observing proceedings as
  agreed.
- Subsequent to the Shake Out Exercise, the principal of the school will be asked if the school
  wishes to be acknowledged or otherwise named in any publication or other research outcomes.
- There will be no mention of the school by name other than at the express wishes of the principal.
   The school has the researcher's contact details, if for any reason they wish to clarify aspects of the project (including changes in their current intention to participate in NZ ShakeOut).

Evacuation times will be recorded and stored in GIS modelling software on a password-protected file on an external hard drive stored with the department of Geological Sciences. This will be stored with the department for up to 5 years and then destroyed.

Given the recent Kaikōura earthquakes, we are mindful that the students may feel emotional or distressed during this practice drill. Since the researcher will not be interacting with students or staff members, however, providing support to distressed students or staff members during the ShakeOut exercise will remain the responsibility of the school.

This MSc thesis project is being conducted in collaboration with the emergency management officer at Kaikōura District Council, who is aware and supportive of the proposed research observing the students during ShakeOut (face to face conversation).

Applicant's Name:	Laura Tilley		
Signature:	Kistly	Date:	21/09/2018

## LOW RISK CHECKLIST - PLEASE ALSO REFER TO THE NOTES AT THE BACK OF THIS DOCUMENT

## Please check that your application / summary has discussed:

- procedures for voluntary, informed consent
- privacy & confidentiality
- how much anonymity can be offered and how it will be maintained
- risk to participants
- obligations under the Treaty of Waitangi
- needs of dependent persons
- conflict of interest
- · permission for access to participants from other individuals or bodies

Low Risk Application Form – 2009

Page 3 of 7

- inducements
   dissemination of research findings
   storage and subsequent destruction of data

# Please ensure that Sections A, B and C below are all completed

## SUPERVISOR DECLARATION:

- I have made the applicant fully aware of the need for and requirement of seeking ERHEC approval for research involving human participants.
   I have ensured the applicant is conversant with the procedures involved in making such an application.

3 The applicant has individually filled in this Low Risk application form which has been reviewed by me.							
Sigr	ned (Supervisor): Thomas Wilso	on Asl	W	<u>/</u>	Date:	23 Sept 2018	
B Supported by the Departmental/School Research Committee:							
Nan	ne: Ben Kennedy	Signature	:	12.h	Date:	26/09/2018	
С	Supported by the Head of De	partment/Sch	100	l:			
Nan	ne:	Signature	:		Date:		
Forward one hard copy and one electronic copy to:  The Secretary Educational Research Human Ethics Committee Level 5 Matariki South (human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz)  All queries will be forwarded to the applicant within 10 working days of receipt of the application by the Secretary of the committee.  Please include a copy of this form as an appendix in your thesis or course work							
Action taken by Educational Research Human Ethics Committee							
	Added to Low Risk Reporting Da	itabase [		Referred to full ERHE	С		
Referred to another Ethics Committee - Please specify:							
App	roved by:				Date:		

## NOTES CONCERNING LOW RISK APPLICATIONS

#### 1. Procedures:

This **Low Risk** application form should **only be used** for proposals which are **Low Risk** as defined in the University of Canterbury Educational Research Human Ethics Committee Principles and Guidelines policy document.

In consultation with the ERHEC, Departments or Schools will develop a process for review and approval. Departments or Schools will advise ERHEC if there are any subsequent changes to the process.

The staff making application must sign a declaration that students:

- undertaking those research projects are being made fully aware of the need for and the requirement
  of seeking ERHEC approval for all research involving human participants,
- are conversant with the procedures involved in making such an application,
- have individually filled in the required applications submitted to the concerned staff.

A low risk notification form should be filled out and forwarded to the secretary of the ERHEC. Attachments should include a sample of the information and consent forms that will be used.

- Low risk applications would involve the same risk as might be encountered in normal daily life. For example.
  - a. Master's theses where the projects do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of a sensitive nature about or from individuals.
  - b. Master's level supervised projects undertaken as part of specific course requirements where the projects do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of a sensitive nature about or from individuals.
  - c. Undergraduate and Honours class research projects which do not raise any issue of deception, threat, invasion of privacy, mental, physical or cultural risk or stress, and do not involve gathering personal information of a sensitive nature about or from individuals, but do not have blanket approval as specified in Section 4 below.
- 3. No project, regardless of level, may be considered as low risk if it involves any of the following.:
  - a. invasive physical procedures or potential for physical harm
  - b. procedures which might cause mental/emotional stress or distress, moral or cultural offence
  - c. personal or sensitive issues
  - d. vulnerable groups
  - e. Tangata Whenua
  - f. cross cultural research
  - g. investigation of illegal behaviour(s)
  - h. invasion of privacy
  - i. collection of information that might be disadvantageous to the participant
  - use of information already collected that is not in the public arena which might be disadvantageous to the participant
  - k. use of information already collected which was collected under agreement of confidentiality
  - I. participants who are unable to give informed consent, including children
  - m.conflict of interest e.g. the researcher is also the lecturer, teacher, treatment-provider, colleague or employer of the research participants, or there is any other power relationship between the researcher and the research participants
  - n. deception
  - o. audio or visual recording without consent
  - p. withholding benefits from "control" groups
  - q. inducements
  - r. risks to the researcher

The only exception to this is that research with children and young people in educational settings may be included in applications made within blanket approval category, provided the skills and strategies being learned are those that would be expected to be part of normal teaching practice on completion of the qualification.

This list is not definitive but is intended to sensitise the researcher to the types of issues to be considered. Low risk research would involve the same risk as might be encountered in normal daily life.

Low Risk Application Form - 2009

In some circumstances research that appears to meet low risk criteria may need to be reviewed by the ERHEC. This might be because of requirements of:

- · The publisher of the research
- An organisation which is providing funding resources, existing data, access to participant, etc.
- Research which meets the criteria for a review by a Health and Disability Ethics Committee (see HRC website).
- A separate low risk form should be completed for each teaching or research proposal which involves human participants and for which ethical approval has been considered or given at Departmental or School level.
- The completed form, together copies of any Information Sheet or Consent Form, should be returned
  to the Secretary, Educational Research Human Ethics Committee, Level 5 Matariki South, and by
  electronic copy, as soon as the proposal has been considered at departmental or school level.
- 6. The Information Sheet and Consent Form should NOT include the statement "This proposal has been reviewed and approved by the University of Canterbury Educational Research Human Ethics Committee" as this is inappropriate for low risk proposals. A statement such as "This proposal has been reviewed and approved by the Department/School of ..... University of Canterbury" must, however, be used.
- Please ensure the Consent Form and the Information Sheet has been carefully proofread; the institution as a whole is likely to be judged by them.
- ERHEC aims to notify applicants for low risk approval within ten working days of receiving the application from the Head of Department/School.
- The research must be consistent with the UC ERHEC Principles and Guidelines. Refer to the appendices of the UC ERHEC Principles and Guidelines for guidance on information sheets and consent forms.
- 10. Please note that if the nature, procedures, location or personnel of the research project changes after departmental/school approval has been given in such a way that the research no longer meets the conditions laid out in Section 5 of the Principles and Guidelines, a full application to the ERHEC must be submitted.
- 11. Ensure that the reference is made to the ERHEC complaints procedure which should be included in the body of the information as follows: Complaints may be addressed to The Chair, Educational Research Human Ethics Committee, University of Canterbury, Private Bag 4800, Christchurch, Email: human-ethics@canterbury.ac.nz.
- 12. This form is available electronically at the following web address: http://www.canterbury.ac.nz/humanethics/erhec/apply.shtml

## 13. Responsibility:

# Supervisors are responsible for:

- a. Theses where the projects do not raise any issues listed.
- Masters level supervised projects undertaken as part of specific course requirements where the projects do not raise any issues listed.
- Undergraduate and Honours class research projects which do not raise any issues listed but do not
  have blanket approval as specified in the Principles and Guidelines.

# HODs are responsible for:

- a. Giving departmental or school approval in principle for the low risk application.
- b. Ensuring a copy of all applications is kept on file in the Department/School.
- Ensuring one hard copy and one electronic copy of the application are sent to the secretary of the ERHEC
- d. Advising the applicant that the project may not commence before the Secretary of the ERHEC has advised final approval (see item 8 above).

The Educational Research Human Ethics Committee is happy to give advice on the appropriateness of research for low risk review.

# B3 Kaikōura High School ShakeOut Observations – Summarised report

This appendix provides a summarised report on Kaikōura High School 2018 ShakeOut observations. The summarise report includes an introduction on why this field research took place, methods and results.

# Introduction

NZ ShakeOut is New Zealand's annual earthquake drill and tsunami hikoi (walk). In 2018, Kaikōura High School was one of two high schools registered to participate in NZ ShakeOut. The purpose is for the school to better prepare and practice their response procedures if a future earthquake and tsunami event were to occur. In evacuation modelling, specifically tsunami evacuation modelling it is difficult to capture realistic evacuation behaviour to input into agent-based modelling (simulation of individuals evacuating from a start location to end location). ShakeOut provided a unique opportunity to observe Kaikōura High School's evacuation procedures if a future earthquake and tsunami were to occur during school hours. Capturing this data also helps with validating evacuation modelling approaches. This research aimed to record the duration and dynamics of the evacuation of the school population to their 'safe zone' location. Specifically, this will include recording how long the school takes to:

- Begin evacuating, following the initial warning
- Fully evacuate the school grounds
- Arrive at and fully pass identified features along the route
- Complete the evacuation hikoi (walk) by arriving at the safe zone location

# Method

Two members of the University of Canterbury tsunami research group drove to Kaikōura High School on the 18<sup>th</sup> October 2018. Observations of Kaikōura High School evacuation performance began outside the school on Thursday 18th at 9.30am. The times taken for the school to begin evacuating, and to evacuate to the school hall was measured using the stopwatch feature on a cell phone, with individual times recorded on a paper map. Both researchers noted down earthquake response actions and hīkoi procedures of pupils recorded at a distance of 100m from any pupil or staff member. Evacuation routes and time estimates was manually digitised in ArcGIS to represent th2 2018 Kaikōura High School ShakeOut and earthquake procedures (see Appendix B2 for a detailed overview of the aims, methods and ethical considerations to conduct this field investigation).

# **Results**

On the day of the national earthquake drill ShakeOut, pupils evacuated from their classrooms to the school hall as a result of wet weather. However, Kaikōura High School's official evacuation safe point is located on the hill directly behind the school grounds. Evacuation times presented below represent Kaikōura High School evacuation response to the School hall.

# Evacuation times recorded:

- It took 32 seconds after the hypothetical 'earthquake shaking' before researchers observed pupils evacuating classrooms
- The total evacuation time for Kaikōura High School to complete their evacuation hikoi to the school hall was 5:02 minutes.

Evacuation procedures of the 2018 Shakeout are presented on the geospatial map in Figure B3-2. This map compares the evacuation procedures recorded in 2018 to the evacuation procedures pupils should take in the case of a future event. Further observations of Kaikōura High School shakeout procedures are presented in Figure B3-1

START: 09:30 a.m.

After the initial 30 second air horn, it took 32 seconds before a member of the UC Tsunami Research Team witnessed the first student to evacuate from a classroom.

Students evacuated randomly out of classrooms. Some students evacuated quickly however, they did not follow the official evacuation route as outlined on the map below. It was observed that few students evacuated through the centre of the school property which is encouraged to avoid due to potential building collapse.

A staff member of Kaikoura High School sounded the air horn for 30 seconds to represent 30 seconds of earthquake ground shaking. During this time, majority of students conducted the 'Drop, Cover and Hold' actions. However, a few students continued their activities either standing or sitting at their desks.

Students were walking at a leisurely pace in evacuating to the School hall. Observations revealed there was limited evacuation leadership from staff members.

Once students had reached the school hall, students were asked to line up in their classes for a roll call. It took 5.02 minutes after the 'initial earthquake shaking' for all students and staff to evacuate to the school hall.

END: 09:35 a.m.

All students and staff had evacuated to the school hall.

Figure B3-1: Kaikōura High School ShakeOut observations. Observations presented in this figure represent the immediate reactions to the hypothetical earthquake warning till the time all staff and students evacuated to Kaikōura School Hall.



Figure B3-2: Map representing observed 2018 ShakeOut and tsunami hĪkoi procedures (yellow) compared with the evacuation procedures encouraged to take during an official response (blue). Red dotted line represents Kaikōura High School safe zone location.

Additional observations and considerations from Kaikoura High School Staff members:

- Staff members were surprised at the time taken for the school to complete the earthquake drill and tsunami hikoi. They recognised more urgency is required, however mentioned it is difficult to encourage urgency from students as it perceived as a 'practice drill'. In a real event, there would be a higher level of urgency, especially among senior students who were in Kaikōura at the time of the earthquake.
- Staff members advised that the school will practice their tsunami hikoi the following week when the weather is clear. The school was planning on running the tsunami hikoi with individual classes and then practice a whole school evacuation.
- Staff members informed members of the UC tsunami research team of the Kaikōura High School official tsunami evacuation zone, which is located on the hill behind the school grounds (Figure B3-2). They acknowledged that there is a step that students and staff will need to climb over to evacuate up to the hill. This could be a potential delay evacuation time when the whole

school is needing to evacuate to safety. Staff members mentioned the school used to evacuate to a shed further up the road however, their priority is to evacuate to the hill and once evacuated safely, they would consider evacuating further inland. During previous evacuation drills to the hill, the school completed their hikoi in around two minutes.

- The schools evacuation plan is relatively similar to the school's fire drill that they practice once every term (they evacuate to the back of the tennis courts), so pupils should be somewhat familiar with the evacuation routes.
- Staff members raised the point that new staff (9 staff members) started following the 2016
  Kaikōura earthquake and subsequent tsunami. It was highlighted that these staff members
  may not be familiar with the tsunami hikoi procedures. This was also recognised for new
  students, particularly new entrants.
- Considerations were discussed, specifically children with injuries (a student was on crutches
  during shakeout) suggesting that there is the possibility of injured students in a future event
  and acknowledged they may need assistance. Other considerations raised were unsure of
  future earthquake shaking duration and time taken for a tsunami wave to reach the coast and
  the potential severity of damage an earthquake could cause to the school property (e.g.
  building collapse).

# Appendix C: 2016 Kaikōura earthquake and tsunami official Civil Defence Emergency Management official responses.

1		Media	Agency	Post
,	12.40 a.m.	Website Kardos (2016)	MCDEM	*National Advisory: No Tsunami Threat to New Zealand No:01" advising "the Pacific Tsunami Warning Centre (PTWC) has issued a Tsunami Information Statement in response to the earthquake. Only messages issued by MCDEM represent the official warning status for NZ. MCDEM has assessed the information with the assistance of scientific advisors. Based on the current information, the initial assessment is that the earthquake is unlikely
12				to have caused a tsunami that will pose a threat to NZ".
r	01.00 a.m.	Website	MCDEM	"National Warning: Tsunami Threat No.01 tsunami warning for all southern coastal areas of NZ. A tsunami is possible. The first wave activity may not be the most significant. Tsunami activity will continue for several hours and the threat must be regarded as real until this warning is cancelled. MDCEM
		Kardos (2016)		is still assessing the threat and will provide more information within the next hour. Meanwhile, people in coastal areas should: stay out of the water, stay off beaches, do not go sightseeing, follow instructions of local civil
3	01.02 a.m.	Facebook	CDEM Canterbury	defence authorities. Warning will remain in effect until a cancellation message is issued by MCDEM".  If Everyone.
ľ l	02.02 8.111.	I BCC DOOK	CDEMICANTERDARY	to you know you are consciously a whole let of large affect backs in and around Yalkoura. If you live easy the coast and you feel a long outhousky or it is no strong you san't stand up, move to higher ground TONG OR
4	01.11 a.m.	Online Bulletin	RN7	STRONG BE GONE. Don't wait for CDM or anyone eite to tell you. Assista  Civil Defence now saying amyone near the east coast of the South Island should move to higher ground where possible. That adapts the earlier advice.
5	01.12 a.m.	Online Bulletin	RNZ	Civil Defence saying there has been a shift in the tidal level based on measurements near Kaikoura.
6	01.19 a.m.	Online Bulletin	RNZ	Here's the full Civil Defence warning: People near the eastern coast of the south island should immediately move to high ground or inland as far as possible. Take your getaway kit with you if possible. Do not travel into the
				areas at risk to get your ist or biologings. Take your pets with you if you can do so safely. Move immediately to the nearest higher ground, or as far inland as you can. If evacuation maps are present, follow the routes shown. Walk or bike if possible and drive only if essential. If driving, keep going once you are well outside the evacuation zone to allow room for others behind you. If you cannot escape the tsunami, go to an upper storey of a sturdy
				building or climb onto a roof or up a tree, or grab a floating object and hang on until help arrives. Boats are usually safer in water deeper than 20 metres than if they are on the shore. Move boats out to sea only if there is time
				and It it safe to do so. Never go to the shore to watch for a tuniami. Stay away from at-risk areas until the official all-clear is given. Listen to your local radio stations as emergency management officials will be broadcasting the most appropriate advice for your community and situation.
7	01.21 a.m.	Facebook	CHCH CDEM	Hi everyone, the Ministry of Civil Defence & Emergency Management have issued a tsunami threat message for the eastern coast of the South Island. People are advised to stay off beaches, and out of the water. We will
	01.29 a.m.	Website	MCDEM	continue to monitor and update you as we know more.  **Pational Warring "Exuman" Invest No.2" advising "AVCDM has issued a tsunami warning for Eastern coast of North and South Island including the Chatham Islands. It may arrive in the Eastern Coast of the North Island  **The Chatham Islands of the
_	02.25 0.111.	Kardos (2016)	III.CDEIII	shortly. Move inland or to higher ground immediately. A stunami is possible. The first wave activity may not be the most significant. Tsunami activity will continue for several hours and the threat must be regarded as real until this warning is cancelled. MDCEM is still assessing the threat and will provide more information within the next hour. People in coastal areas should: stay out of the water, stay off beaches, do not go sightseeing, follow
				unit this will ring to carefully. Audition is such as set a set of the set of
	01.35 a.m.	kardos (2016)	CHCH CDEM	IDANTE
,	01.33 a.III.	kardos (2016)	CHCH CDEW	No evacuations have been issued at this stage and we are continuing to seek further clarification from the Ministry of Civil Defence Emergency Management. Stay out of the water (sea, rivers and estuaries, including boating
10	1:37 a.m.	kardos (2016)	NZ POLICE	activities, stay of beaches and shore areas. Do not go sightseeing.  Telephone to (District Operations Manager, Chch Police) at 02.07 a.m. to request that the Police activate the "Costal Evacuation Plan" because CCC is setting off the tsunami sirens. Informed by Police that the Police had
	2.37 0.111.	Kai 003 (2020)	THE FOLICE	started execuating approximately half an four before on the direction of the District Commander. The District Commander had been directed to activate the Coastal Evacuation Plan by the Deputy Commissioner of National Operations of Police based in Wellington.
11	01.38 a.m.	Facebook	CDEM Canterbury	Operations or you have a report in the title gauge at Kalkoura has risen by two metres. Jessica
12	01.44am	Online Bulletin	RNZ	To repost, Civil Defence is warning a "destructive tsunami" is possible as a result of this morning's quake. It is asking people in low-lying areas on the east coast of both the North and South Island to move to higher ground
13	02.01 a.m.	Website	MCDEM	immediately.  Maional Warning: Tsunami Threat 83 HAMNER SPRINGS EARTHQUAKE AND TSUNAMI No.03 MARINE AND LAND THREAT" advising "MCDEM has issued a tsunami warning for all of the eastern coast of the North Island and all of
		Kardos (2016)		the east coast of the South Island including the Chatham Islands. Confirmation has been received that a tunnami was generated. Waves have been detected on the Geonet Tsunami Gauges. The first sunami wave activity has been feetered in the areas arround Kalburus and Wellicenten. The first wave activity may not be the most classificant Tsunami activity will continue for expectations; capacital forces and the threat much be received and the samples is
				been detected in the areas around Kaikoura and Wellington. The first wave activity may not be the most significant. Issunami activity will continue for several hours and the threat must be regarded as real until this warning is cancelled. People in coastal areas should: stay out of the water, stay off beaches, do not go sightseeing, follow instructions of local civil defence authorities. Warning will remain in effect until a cancellation message is
				issued by MCDEM".
	02.05 a.m.	kardos (2016)		Telephone to (Canterbury CDEM Group Team Leader) to check that MCDEM were directing CDEM to activate the sirens. confirmed yes, at the direction of the National Controller, CDEM must activate the sirens.
15	02.11 a.m.	Facebook	CHCH CDEM MCDEM	NEW INFORMATION: We are evacuating low lying areas of Christchurch, including around the estuary. This is a precaution as we are not expecting large waves or substantial damage on land in Christchurch.  National Warning Tunams #4 - Threat to Marine and Land Areas. No.04. Issued 0215 hours 2021 #1 Alov 2016
	U2.15 a.m.	Unline	MCDEM	
		l	l	The Ministry of Civil Defence & Emergency Management (MCDEM) has issued a tsunami warning land threat from the East Cape to Southland including Wellington and the Chatham Islands. There is a beach and marine threat for the remainder of New Zealand.
		l	l	
		l	l	Areas under "Marine and Basch Threat" can expect unusually strong currents and unpredictable water flows near the shore. This means a threat to basch, harbour, estuary and small boat activities. The sevenity of currents and changing used flows will use you within particular occustal area and over the period this warring is in effect.  Area suder "Marine and Land Threat" can in operat a here of coastal inundation to but area near the shore. Current assessments indicate that wave amplitudes of up to 2 m can be expected in some areas.
			1	Areas under 'Marine and Land Threat' can also expect a threat of coastal inundation to land areas near the shore. Current assessments indicate that wave amplitudes of up to 2 m can be expected in some areas. Tsunami wave activity has been detected. The first wave activity may not be the most significant. Tsunami activity will continue for several hours and the threat must be regarded as real until this warning is cancelled.
			1	
			l	People in the above coastal areas should:  1. Stay out of the water (see, rivers and estuaries, including boating activities)
		l	l	2. Stay off beaches and shore areas
				3. Do not go sightseeing 4. Share this information with family, neighbours and friends
				S. Listen to the radio and/or TV for updates.  6. Follow instructions of local civil defines authorities
				1. If a land thractis forecasted for your area, take appropriate evasive action (see 'Marine and Land Threat' below)
				This warning will remain in effect until a cancellation message is issued by MCDEM.
				Only messages issued by MCDEM represent the official warning status for New Zealand. We note the Pacific Tsunami Warning Centre (PTWC) has issued a Tsunami Information Statement for this event. PTWC messages do not represent the official warning status for New Zealand.
				Local civil defence authorities will interpret this information for their areas and advise public action.
16		Facebook	CDEM Canterbury	As a precautionary measure all residents on coastal areas evacuate to high ground Requz
17	02.24 a.m.	Facebook	CHCH CDEM	UPDATE: If you live on low lying ground within one kilometre of the Christchurch coastline you are advised to evacuate inland or to higher ground. This is a precaution as we are not expecting substantial waves or damage on land. For more information of low-lying areas go to: http://canterburymaps.govt.nzi_/Tsunami_canterbury.html
18	03.07 a.m.	Facebook	CDEM Canterbury	UPDATE: Sarch for your property in the address search bar to see Canterbury's transmit execusion zones.  UPDATE: Invocod College has been set up as a execution point for popel with have left their frome. The address is 85 Addwins Road, Phillipstown. The centre is just getting set up now and will be operational from about
'	03.15 a.m.	Facebook	CHCH CDEM	Or Table 12 immoor College has seen see up as a executation point to people with nave let that more management as possible to a so accommon mode, minimp provided.  **Assam. Alarca So Alarca So an executation concern. We will be opening further controls as so accommon mode, minimp provided.  **Assam. Alarca So Alarca So an executation concern. We will be opening further controls as so accommon mode, minimp provided.  **Assam. Alarca So Alarca So an executation concern. We will be opening further controls as so accommon mode, minimp provided.  **Assam. Alarca So Alarca So and the source of the sourc
20	03.20 a.m.	Website	MCDEM	"National Warnings5: Sunami - Threat to Marine and Land Areas" advising "MCDEM has issued a tsunami warning (marine and land threat) from East Cape to Southland, including Wellington (which also includes the Cook Straight areas). And phorough Sounds 7 Earnes Bay and the Chatham Islands, and a marine threat for eall other few Zealand ocastal areas, see the mao attached for affected areas. Areas under "Marine and Land Threat" can also
		Kardos (2016)		expect a threat to coastal inundation to land areas near the shore. Current assessments indicate that wave amplitudes of up to 3-5 meters along the coastlines closest to the earthquake egicenter (estimated from Blenheim to
				Banks Peninsula, and also including the Chatham Islands; can be expected in some areas (see attached map), People in casastal areas should: stay out of the water, stay off backnes, do not go sighteeing, not follow instructions of focal civil defence authorities. Warning will remain in effect until a cancellation message is issued by MCDEM. Local civil defence
				authorities will interpret this information for their areas and advise public action." Map attached highlights Christchurch and Banks Peninsula as subject to a tsunami threat at a level of 3-5m.
	03.49 a.m. 03.56 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook	RNZ CHCH CDEM	Sarah Stuart-Black, then ast lonal director of civil defence says not to return home until they have given the all clear.  3.SAM - LARST UPGATE
122				
22				Christchurch Civil Defence and Emergency Management has activated its Emergency Operations Centre and is currently responding to the earthquake. Civil Defence Controller John Mackie says people in low-lying coastal
				areas within one kilometre of the Canterbury coast are instructed to execute inland or head to higher ground. Exumant sirrens have been sounding for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the precautionary execution order remains in place. "We are expected gaves heights for between three and five metres from Bethelm to Banks Pennisul. Waves may arrive over the next few hours." An occuration control is being set up or
12				areas within one kilometre of the Canterbury coast are instructed to evacuate inland or head to higher ground. Trunamis sinens have been sounding for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the precautionary evacuation order remains in black. "We are expecting wave heights for between three and few netters from Benderin to Banks Peninsula. Wears any arrive over the mest few hours." An execution centre is being set up at Unwood College It is expected to be operational from about 4.m. Mr Mackies encouraged people to try to find friends and finally to stay with I they can. "Warras School Hall is a loo opine for people who need somewhere to go
22				rans with non-skilometer of the clienthury coast are instructed to execute in fining of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the principles of the
22				areas with non-kilometer of the clienthury coast are instructed to executar instand or head to higher ground. Traumais sirres have been counting for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the princationary execution or any execut
2				areas with non-killometer of the circulative yeast are instructed to execute instand or head to higher ground. Trustment invent-have been counting for some time may be the one previous may be interested to the private prin
2				areas with non-killometer of the circulative yeast are instructed to execute instand or head to higher ground. Trustment invent-have been counting for some time may be the one previous may be interested to the private prin
2				areas with non-killometer of the Centrebury cask are instructed to execute instand or head to higher ground. Trustment intens-have been counting for some time and there opportson may be intermitted but the prince and execute instances. The counting of the prince are intermitted in the prince and the prince are intermitted. When the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince and the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince and the adviced that same prince are the search and the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. As when the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. As when the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. As when the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. Each time you for force, cover, and hid on.  **Logical Association of the country of the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted. The prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are intermitted in the prince are
2				areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coast are instructed to executar instead or head to higher ground. Trustmest street have been counting for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the principles of the
				areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coast are instructed to execute in finite of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the pirit cause in the cause in the new pirit cause in the pirit cause i
	04.24 a.m.	Website	мсдем	areas with non-aktionness of the ciramitury coakt are instructed to execute in fund or head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for came time and there operation may be intermitted but the price value of the price of the
	04.24 a.m.	Website Kardos (2016)	MCDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the ciramitury coakt are instructed to execute in fund or head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for came time and there operation may be intermitted but the price value of the price of the
	04.24 a.m.		MCDEM	areas with non-altitionness of the Centrebury casts are instructed to execute instant of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for cases them and there oppration may be intermitted but the price access to make a contract of the price and the pric
	04.24 a.m.		MCDEM	cross within one kilometer of the climaterbuy coast are instructed to executar instead or head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there operation may be intermittent but the principle country. An occusion control is being set up at principle country of the principle country of the principle country. An occusion control is being set up at principle country of the principle country. An occusion control is being set up at principle country of the principle country of the principle country. An occusion control is being set up at principle country of the principle country of the principle country. An occusion control country of the principle country of the cou
23		Kardos (2016)		areas with non-altiformer of the Centrebury casis are instructed to execute instant of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the principal content of the country of t
23	04.38 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin	RNZ	crease with no next items to give a contracting country and the contraction of the contracting of the creating in place. You are a registering was heighted in the creates in the contracting of the creating in place. We are a registering was heighted in the creates from the feeding to design a few places and the contracting of the creating of the creating of the contracting of the contractin
23		Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin		was with no aktionness of the Centrebury cask are instructed to execute instant of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the principle country. As a construction of the country of th
23	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook	RNZ CHCH CDEM	was with no aktionness of the Centrebury cask are instructed to execute instant of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the principle country. As a construction of the country of th
23	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook	RNZ CHCH CDEM	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrebury casis are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the principle continues of the country of
23	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook	RNZ CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there oppration may be intermitted but the price and execution order.  **Constitution of the control of the cont
23 24 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook  Website	RNZ CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment stress have been counting for some time and there oppration may be intermitted but the price and execution order.  **Constitution of the control of the cont
23 24 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for came time and there oppration may be intermitted but the principle coaktion. It is been a counting of the coaktion of t
23 24 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook  Website	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for came time and there oppration may be intermitted but the principle coaktion. It is been a counting of the coaktion of t
23 24 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook  Website	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-altiformeter of the Centretury costs are instructed to execute intended or head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price value of the county of
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-altitionness of the Centrellary costs are instructed to execute intend of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there oppration may be intermitted but the price and head of the control of the
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Kardos (2016)  Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook  Website	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the Centrebury casks are instructed to execute intended or head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price value of the county of t
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the Centrellary coasts are instructed to execute intended or head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for came time and there oppration may be intermitted but the price and intermitted to the pict results of the price and many of the pric
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	sease with non-altiformets of the Centrebury casis are instructed to execute infland of head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and executed with the price and the received with the price and the received with the price and the received with the price and the sole with the price and the sole which the sole are constructed and the other is progressing with moving residents out. Civil Defects is also in contract with the price and the sole that the sole and the
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Website Website Website	RNZ CHCH CDEM CHCH CDEM	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be inferred but the price and many of the second of the coaktion and the c
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m.	Conline Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016) Facebook	INVZ. CHICH CDEM. CHICH CDEM. MCDEM. CHICH CDEM.	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Thumans triven have been counting for some time and there opporation may be interested to be the provision of the county of the
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Website Website Website	INVZ. CHICH CDEM. CHICH CDEM. MCDEM. CHICH CDEM.	areas with non-aktionness of the clientifuty coakt are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counteding for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and here opporation may be intermitted but the price and here opporation may be intermitted to the price and here opporation may be intermitted to the price and here is being a return of the first and here. A return of the many of the price and here is being a return of the first and here. A return of the many of the price and here added in the city as a required. Then are the rest formed in a reas affected by the seacost on order. On his been own causated and the other is progressing with moving residents out. Civil Defaces is also in content with the power and head which the large move devices are selfer out at ser. Police have read blocks in place to prevent access to the coastal areas that may be effected by a trustment. Residents will be a price and here the power and head of the content of the power and head of the power
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Website Website Website	INVZ. CHICH CDEM. CHICH CDEM. MCDEM. CHICH CDEM.	sease with non-altiformets of the Centrolluy costs are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Thumans trives have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the prince and the county of the prince of the county of the county of the prince of the county of the county of the prince of the county of the coun
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Website Website Website	INVZ. CHICH CDEM. CHICH CDEM. MCDEM. CHICH CDEM.	areas with non-aktionness of the Centrebury casks are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Trustment stress have been scounding for some time and there opporation may be inferred both the price and execute in the power and non-aktion and the price of the power and non-aktion and the price of the power and non-aktion and the price of the power and non-aktion and the power and non-aktion and the power and non-aktion and the price of the power and non-aktion and the power and the power and non-aktion and non-aktion and the power and non-aktion an
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs it are instructed to executar instant of head to highly ground. Trustment street have been counting for some time and there opporation may be interested to be the provision of the county o
23 25 26	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m.	Online Bulletin Facebook Facebook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Website Website Website	INVZ. CHICH CDEM. CHICH CDEM. MCDEM. CHICH CDEM.	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intends of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counteding for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and the company of the price of the counter of the counte
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intends of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opports on may be interested to be the prevent access to the central streets. A county of the county is been prevent access to the central streets of the prevent access to the prevent access to the prevent access to the prevent access to the central streets. A county of the prevent access to the central streets to
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intended or head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and the county of the price of the price of the county of the price
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intends of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opports on may be interested to be the prevent as a season of the county of the c
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformets of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intended or head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and the county of the
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	areas with non-aktionness of the Centrebury casks are instructed to execute intended or head to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counteding for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and heavy control or the counter from the feeding makes a feeding or the counter from the feeding makes a feeding or the counter from the feeding makes a feeding or the counter from the feeding makes a feeding or the counter from the feeding makes a feeding or the counter from the feeding makes and the counter from the feeding makes and a feeding makes and the counter from the feeding makes and
23 23 25 25 25 27 27 29 30 30 30	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 06.15 a.m. 06.56 a.m. 77.00 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Pacebook Pacebook Website Kardos (2016)  Website Kardos (2016)  Website Facebook Facebook	RIVE CHECKEM  ONCH COEM  MICHEM  MICHE	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intended or head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and their controls are set in the Petrollury and the Centrols and the Centrol
23 24 25 25 26 27 27 28 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 05.44 a.m. 06.15 a.m.	Cottine Bulletin Facebook Packbook Website Kardos (2016)  Facebook  Facebook  Website Kardos (2016)	INVECTOREM CONCENTRATION OF THE CONCENTRATION OF T	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute intended or head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price and their controls are set in the Petrollury and the Centrols and the Centrol
23 23 25 25 25 27 27 29 30 30 30	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 06.15 a.m. 06.56 a.m. 77.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RIVE CHECKEM  ONCH COEM  MICHEM  MICHE	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be interested to be the present and sease of the county of the cou
23 23 25 25 25 27 27 29 30 30 30	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 06.15 a.m. 06.56 a.m. 77.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RIVE CHECKEM  ONCH COEM  MICHEM  MICHE	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute infland of head to highly ground. Trustment streets have been counting for some time and there opporation may be interested to be the present and sease of the county of the cou
23 24 25 26 26 27 27 28 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 06.15 a.m. 06.56 a.m. 77.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	ONCE COREM ONES COREM	sease with non-altiformers of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute in index of head to highly ground. Trustment street have been counted for the season of the control of the c
23 24 25 26 26 27 27 29 29	04.38 a.m. 04.46 a.m. 06.15 a.m. 06.56 a.m. 77.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Website Kardos (2016)	RIVE CHECKEM  ONCH COEM  MICHEM  MICHE	sease with non-altiformets of the Centrebury casit are instructed to execute in index of head to highly ground. Trustment street have been counteding for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but the price was surprised, where which it were from the feeling made and a street from the feeling made and the feeling made
23 24 25 26 26 27 27 29 29	04.88 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Website Kardos (2016)	ONCE COREM ONES COREM	sease with no existence of the Centrollury costs are instructed to execute instant of the de to higher ground. Trustment streets have been counteding for some time and there opporation may be intermitted but they are constituted in the counters of the co
23 24 25 26 26 27 27 29 29	04.88 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Website Kardos (2016)	ONCE COREM ONES COREM	areas watthin only income of the Carinfordury coals are instructed to exclusion indired on head to highly ground. Trustees there have been sociously for come time and three operation may be interest three and the material for the medical to the start water water than the time. The excellent is a start of the control of
23 24 25 26 26 27 27 29 29	04.88 a.m. 05.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m. 06.00 a.m.	Corline Bulletin Facebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Pacebook Website Kardos (2016)	ONCE COREM ONES COREM	serves within the serves of the Contribution o

# Appendix D: Field Investigations GPS tracking

Using real-time GPS tracking data is a technique to quantify the effects of slope and terrain on walking speed data inputs for pedestrian evacuation models (Power et al. 2020). The Apple mobile phone GPS tracking app 'MyTracks' was used in this research to generate GPS routes and time estimates for established walking tracks along Kaikōura Peninsula and the Esplanade. In August 2018, the mobile app was used to test 'slow walk speed' to represent evacuation of elderly or disabled population, 'medium walk speed' to represent evacuation speeds of an average walking pace such as the pace at which someone walks to work or could represent a family evacuating with children, and 'run speed' which represented evacuating with urgency. The GPS app and various walking speeds were tested for the following Kaikōura walkways:

- Peninsula Walkway
- Dempsey Track
- South Bay Track (North side of Kaikōura Peninsula)
- South Bay Track (South side of Kaikōura Peninsula)
- St Pauls Track
- Anne Boyd Walkway
- Ward Street Track
- Esplanade

These tracks were tested to represent elevation variation, to see if this would impact GPS tracking speeds. The results of the GPS tracking data were provided as the outputs shown in Figure 4.2-4. The GPS tracking data were uploaded as a KML file into ArcMap to produce a map output to represent evacuation tracks for various speeds. Microsoft Excel was used to analyse the results and calculate average walking speeds.



Figure D1-1: GPS Tracking mobile app 'MyTracks' outputs used to determine evacuation walking speeds. This figure represents the example for St Pauls Track. Left, represents the spatial location of the walking track, second panel from the left represents the time and elevation data to walk segments of the track, followed by elevation variation of the tracks, the right panel represents the variation in speed.

The results of the 'real-time' GPS tracking data vary depending on topography of the evacuation route. Figure D1-2 provides a geospatial visualisation of the 8 walking tracks along Kaikōura Peninsula and Kaikōura Esplanade tested in this study. The effects of various walking speeds and terrain were evident from the results of the GPS tracking times. The results conclude that evacuation speeds for medium walking speeds ranged from 4 km/her to 6km/hr. Slow walking speeds ranged around 2km/hr and 'run' speed concluded a range of 7 -10km/hr. Figure D1-2 provides a detailed breakdown of calculated walking speeds for each tested walking path.



Figure D1-2: GPS tracking data captures for 8 walking tracks along Kaikōura Peninsula and Kaikōura Esplanade. Coloured lines represent varying walking speeds (red=run, orange=medium walk, yellow=slow walk).

MyTracks Data Kaikōura Field Trip		
	Average time (min/sec)	Average time (km/hr)
Peninsula Walkway		
Slow walk	30.76m/min	1.8
Medium Walk	93m/min	5.6
Run	175m/min	10.5
Dempsy Track		
Slow walk	33.94m/min	2.0
Medium walk	70.16m/min	4.2
Run	115m/min	6.9
South Bay Track (North side of Peninsula)		
Slow walk	35m/min	2.1
Medium walk	74.96m/min	4.5
Run	121.63m/min	7.3
South Bay Track (top of Peninsula)		
Medium walk	96.86m/min	5.8

South Bay Track (South side of Peninsula)		
Medium walk	85.28m/min	5.1
St Pauls Track		
Slow walk	32.74m/min	2.0
Medium walk	76.06m/min	4.6
Run	120.97m/min	7.3
Side Loop (medium walk)	73.39m/min	4.4
Anne Boyd Walkway		
Medium walk	57.95m/min	3.5
Ward Street Track		
Medium Walk	71.5m/min	4.3
Esplanade		
Run - Brighton Street	165m/min	9.9
Run - Esplanade	151m/min	9.1
Medium walk - Torquay	85.9m/min	5.2
South Bay Parade		
Medium walk (1)	95.86m/min	5.8
Medium walk (2)	91.84m/min	5.5
Run (1)	166.97m/min	10.0
Run (2)	140.70m/min	8.4